This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

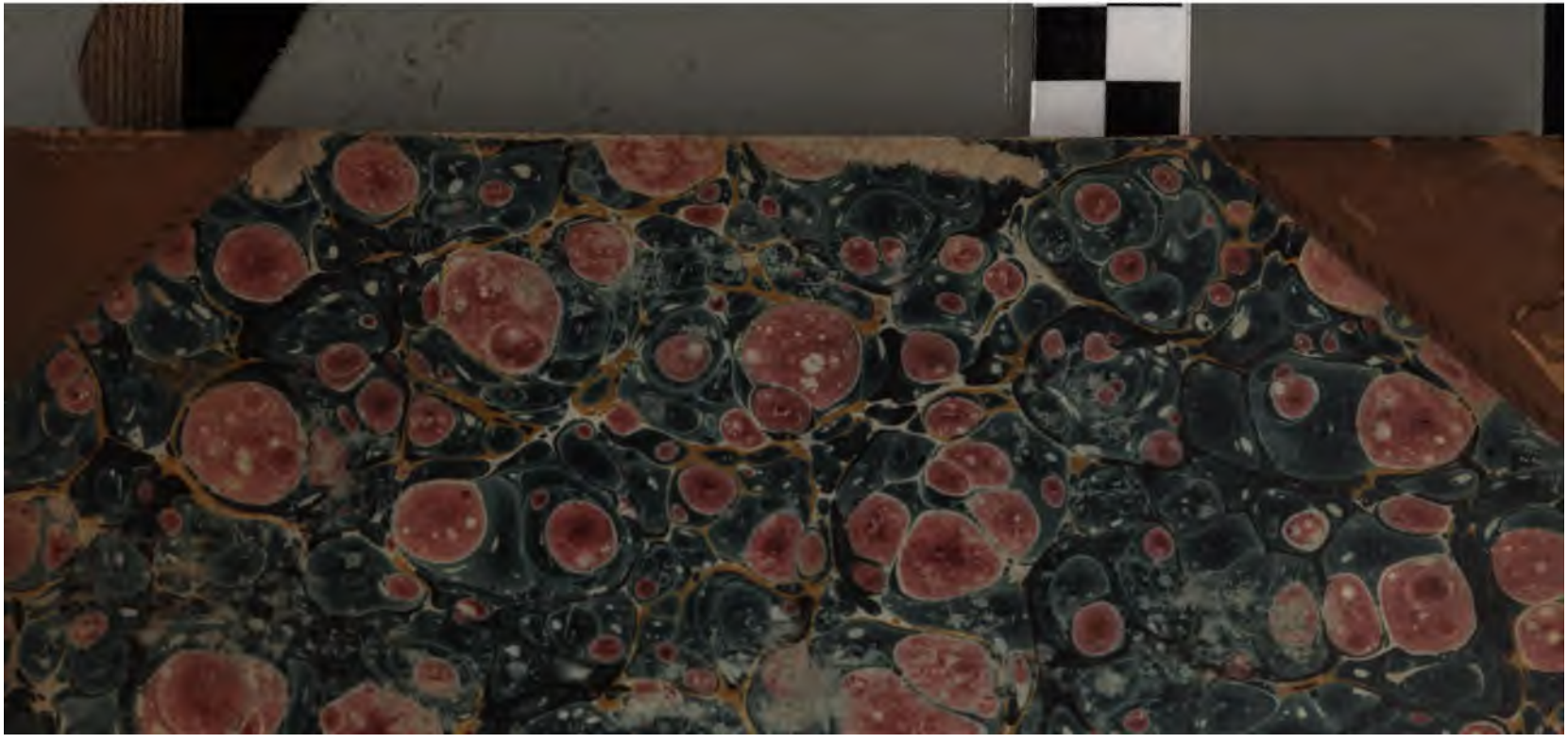
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



6000061980

THE

CELESTIAL PLANISPHERES,

OR

ASTRONOMICAL CHARTS.

BY THOMAS OXLEY,

FORMERLY OF LONDON, AND MANY YEARS MATHEMATICIAN IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

PART I.

SHEWING BY INSPECTION, OR ONLY BY DRAWING A STRAIGHT LINE.

All the most useful Problems in Astronomy, in the most Easy, Pleasing, and Expeditious manner, by means of the Celestial Planispheres.

PART II.

A NEW AND COMPREHENSIVE SYSTEM OF

DIRECTIONAL MOTION,

ACCORDING TO THE PRINCIPLES OF PTOLEMY AND PLACIDUS,

Explained in the most Easy and Familiar manner, so as to be perfectly understood by every capacity. Also,

A COMPLETE SYSTEM OF CALCULATING NATIVITIES,

BY THE CELESTIAL PLANISPHERES,

FROM THE EQUATOR TO SIXTY DEGREES OF LATITUDE;

Whereby the most Laborious and hitherto Intricate Calculations are solved, by Drawing a Straight Line, or only by extending a pair of Compasses, and the Arcs of Direction are obtained with wonderful exactness, and as much can be performed in a few Hours, as formerly required many Days. Illustrated by the Nativity of the

EMPEROR NAPOLEON.

PART III.

CONTAINING NEW AND IMPROVED FORMULÆ FOR

ASTRONOMICAL CALCULATIONS,

Also, for finding from the True Mundane Position of the Part of Fortune, its True Place in the Zodiac both in Longitude and Latitude, also, the True Method of finding the correct Polar Elevations both of the Planets, and of all the different Houses of the Celestial Figures, etc. and other interesting particulars in Directional Motion, never before Published.

PART IV.

(WHICH IS ADDED BY PARTICULAR DESIRE,)

CONTAINING CHOICE ASTROLOGICAL APHORISMS

FROM PTOLEMY:

Also, the Significations of the Different Positions of the Planets, and of Directions from the Celebrated W. LILLY; so that a Purchaser of these "Celestial Planispheres," will be enabled thereby both to calculate and to give a correct judgment on any Nativity without the help of any other book. To which is added the Author's New Theory of the Predictive Science, being a most irresistible defence of Astrology.

Also, interesting Remarks and Calculations, on the

NATIVITY OF KING WILLIAM THE FOURTH.

WITH TEN LARGE COPPERPLATES, MOST ACCURATELY ENGRAVED.

Printed by F. B. Wright, Liverpool;

Published by Davis and Dickson, 17, St. Martin's Le Grand, Newgate Street, London; Blackwood, Edinburgh; Robinsons, and Grapel, Liverpool; and may be had of the Booksellers in general.

1830.

671.

DEDICATION.

TO THE

LOVERS OF THE ASTRONOMICAL SCIENCES GENERALLY,

IN THE BRITISH EMPIRE,

AND PARTICULARLY

TO THE PRESIDENT AND MEMBERS

OF THE

MERCURII OF LONDON.

—o—o—o—

Learned and Ingenious Gentlemen:

It is now universally acknowledged, that an Invention which saves time, and abridges labor, that simplifies difficult Sciences, or facilitates abtruse calculations, is a most desirable acquisition: that the Work which I now offer to your notice, combines in an eminent degree all these useful properties, needs no argument to prove, and will be immediately acknowledged by every candid and ingenious person. The utility of the Work will sufficiently speak in its praise. I have only to add that I sincerely hope that it will afford you as much pleasure and satisfaction, as it has cost me study and labor to carry to the great extent and perfection in which it is now most respectfully dedicated to your service, by,

Learned and Ingenious Gentlemen,

Your very obedient servant,

and wellwisher,

THOMAS OXLEY.

Liverpool, Nov. 1830.

PREFACE.

We are informed by the Sacred Writings that in the Primitive Ages of the World, men lived to the very protracted ages of several hundred years; but with very few exceptions their lives appear to have been so uniform and monotonous, their achievements so few, and the works they performed were accomplished in so tedious a manner, that we can have no doubt that we Moderns pass through as great vicissitudes and even accomplish more in the space of forty or fifty years than the Ancients did in the whole course of their lives. For my own part I am strongly persuaded, although our lives are so much shorter than those of the Ancients, that our faculties for the enjoyment of life are greatly increased, and very far superior to theirs; that our means of accomplishing whatever we desire, whether for expediting the works of labor, the enterprises of merchandise, or for the acquisition of knowledge, are so multiplied and improved, that we can do more in a few months than the Ancients could in the space of several years. Were it necessary to enumerate Examples, I should only have to mention the wonders performed by the Printing Press and the Steam Engine; with these reflections in my mind, and in this age of improvement, I should have been surprised that the work which I now first offer to

the Notice of the Scientific World, had not been brought forward some years ago by some ingenious person and friend of Science; but knowing as I do by experience, that although it is so easy and pleasant to use the Planispheres which I now offer for your service, to construct them was a work of considerable labor and difficulty, which no doubt is the reason the work was never before made public: for it appears that about thirty six years ago, a learned and ingenious gentleman, Mr. Ranger, of London, invented a Planisphere; but what it was I know not, having never seen it; neither could I obtain the least information of its construction, as I shall plainly shew in the first chapter of this treatise; I therefore claim the honor of the invention of what I now publish, with as much right and reason as Lord Napier did claim the invention of his Logarithms; and I may fairly add that these Planispheres will be found as useful for the purposes to which they are applied, as the Logarithms are in their way: and moreover I have taken great pains to render them generally useful both to those who Study only Modern Astronomy, and to those who Study the Elementary Philosophy of the Ancients commonly called Astrology. The first mentioned will have a work well worth their purchase money, and in regard to the latter, they will find the work of inestimable value. The Author of the Planispheres well knows that the publication of this work will expose him to the sneers of the ignorant, and envy of the malevolent; they will call him an Astrologer, etc., but he regards them not; and it will be the signal for those who are troubled with

the Cacœthes Scribendi to pour forth the torrents of their venom, through the channels of various periodicals; they will glory in the opportunity, or the pretext it may afford them, to display their rhetorical flourishes in declaiming against the Science of Planetary Influences; but as I do not publish this work with the design of offending any person, therefore I intend not to suffer myself to be offended by any one. I do not wish to induce any one to believe any thing against his own opinion, for as the Poet says,

"A man convinced against his will
Retains the same opinion still."

And I have often observed that those persons are always the loudest in their abuse of Astrology who know nothing at all of the Science, but the name only, however learned they may be in other Arts and Sciences. I will just ask such persons, Would they not think the conduct of any person extremely ridiculous in setting himself up for a judge of the operations of Surgery and of the Practice of Medicine, when he was entirely ignorant of both? Neither must he imagine, however clever he may be in other matters, that he can become a competent judge of the Science by perusing Sibly's Astrology once over, let all such persons know this truth; and although a single perusal may enable an Orator to praise or to condemn, to tear in tatters, or to adorn with the flowers of rhetoric, it nevertheless requires some years of study, of practice and of attentive observation to make a man a competent judge of the merits of any particular Art or Science.

I have further to observe that on one subject it is highly proper that both the friends and the enemies of Astrology should be set right. I allude to what are commonly called Astrological Calculations, when in fact there are no Astrological Calculations; for the Calculations erroneously so called, are most evidently as purely Astronomical as the taking the altitude of the Sun, or of clearing the observed distance of the Moon from the effects of Parallax and Refraction.

And as regards the predicting of events by the configurations of the heavenly bodies, whatever opinions I myself entertain on these subjects are founded on facts, and upon many years study, calculation and observation, and if I thought it proper or convenient I could produce many well authenticated instances of various accidents having been predicted for many years beforehand by planetary configurations; but the one which I have recorded in the ninth chapter of the second part of this work, would weigh more in my mind in favor of the Predictive Science, than all the bigotted and flimsy arguments that the Anti-astrologic Orators could bring against it. But notwithstanding what I have just advanced; agreeably to my New Theory which is contained in the concluding chapter of this book, predictions derived from the positions and configurations of the Planets may really come to pass, and that entirely independent of any planetary influence whatever; being founded on principles strictly Mathematical.

The Author is too well acquainted with the ways of the world, and the failings of mankind, not to know

well that whoever publishes any thing curious or useful may certainly calculate upon having a host of enemies and detractors; the ignorant will be so through bigotry and lack of knowledge, and the envious through want of candor to acknowledge merit; he therefore does not expect to fare better than other Authors; and he now reiterates what he has before remarked, that he does not publish this work with the wish to offend any one, and therefore if after this avowal should any traduce and disparage this performance, he will venture to predict, that his publication will become a standard work, and that these Planispheres will be had in request many ages after the memory of his traducers shall have been buried in Oblivion.

RECOMMENDATIONS.

Mr. THOMAS OXLEY having favored me with a survey of this Work when in Manuscript, having been myself a searcher and admirer of Elementary Philosophy for more than twenty years, I consider it a most masterly invention and as such I do recommend it to all the real lovers of Celestial Knowledge, as Witness my hand,

Monday, 27th Dec. 1829. J, MASON.

SIR,—I have had the pleasure of seeing and examining Mr. OXLEY'S grand Work on the Celestial Planispheres, or a New and Easy Mode of performing all the Calculations applicable to the Astral Sciences and of which I most highly approve as being superior to every thing I have ever seen, and as such I most strongly recommend this work to all who are lovers of those Sciences, as Witness my hand,

JOHN WATSON.

To the Printer, etc. January 2nd, 1830.

Mr. THOMAS OXLEY having submitted to my inspection a Manuscript and a number of Astronomical and Astrological Charts. Having been a searcher in the Celestial Science for some years, I have no hesitation in pronouncing *the whole Work* a most excellent invention, and as such I most earnestly recommend it to all the real lovers of Urania.

The Work will facilitate Astronomical Pursuits, therefore will be a most valuable acquisition to the Student in that Science, and to those who may wish to study Astrology as a rational amusement, they will find every thing necessary to make them adepts in so pleasing a Science.

P. S.—Please to put my name as a Subscriber on the list, and I heartly wish it may be followed by numbers as it must have been a most laborious undertaking, as Witness my hand. THOMAS WILLIAMS.

Monday, January 4th, 1830.

Hood-street, Corner of St. John's Lane, Liverpool.

Mr. OXLEY, having submitted to my examination when in Manuscript, his New and Extraordinary Treatise and Astronomical Charts, I have no hesitation in pronouncing the whole performance a Mathematical Work of great merit, and equally adapted to the use of the Ladies as of the Gentlemen, and as such I most strongly recommend this Work to all who are admirers of the Astronomical Sciences, as Witness my hand,

JAMES FLANAGAN,

Jan. 15th, 1830. *Professor of Nautical Astronomy, etc.*

Virgil-st. Liverpool.

To MR. OXLEY,

SIR,

Having been favored by a sight of the proofs of your forthcoming Work on Astronomical Planispheres, I beg to express my approbation of the great ingenuity displayed throughout the whole book. From my knowledge of Astronomy, Navigation, and Astrology, the former of which I have professionally studied above twenty four years, and the latter art for my amusement during more than seven years, I have no hesitation in saying, that the principle of your inventions and discoveries now published, may be applied with infinite advantage by all persons who practise either one or other of the above arts. To Astrologers your Planispheres and tables will be invaluable; and by removing the obstacles to the study of Planetary influence, occasioned by the extensive computation hitherto necessary, your exertions will go farther than those of any individual, since the days of *Placidus de Titus*, to serve the sacred cause of Philosophical truth. I wish you every success.

Your obedient servant,

R. J. MORRISON,

LIEUT. ROYAL NAVY,

Inventor of the Commercial Telegraph.

Liverpool, 28th Oct. 1830.

PART I.

CHAPTER I.

History of the Discovery of Planispheres, etc.

THE Author of this work having always been of a studious disposition, and particularly fond of investigating anything that was considered as curious and uncommon, the Elementary Philosophy of the Antients attracted his attention at a very early age, insomuch that at the age of fourteen or fifteen years he could calculate a Nativity very correctly; but as he did this only with a view of satisfying his own curiosty and for the love he had of investigating the truth of things, he scarcely let any person know, that he knew anything about it, practising it only as an amusement for his leisure hours. But being soon convinced that the better any one understands the mathematics, so much the better would he be able to make astronomical calculations;

this inspired him with a greater desire to pursue with more diligence the study of the mathematics, so that his other pursuits soon put it out of his power to spare any time for elementary philosophy, owing to its requiring so much time to make the astronomical calculations for that science; so that after he had gone through Simpson's Euclid, and Mr. Keith's Plane and Spherical Trigonometry, he formed an idea that he could discover some more easy and expeditious mode of performing such calculations. With this notion strongly impressed on his mind, he purchased the second edition of Dr. Kelly's excellent Treatise on Spherics, with a view of helping him in the discovery of what he so much desired, but of the possibility of which he was not quite certain; for he found that the spherical projections taught in the works just mentioned, would not at all answer the purposes that he desired, and when he had nearly given up the pursuit, he was confirmed in his idea of the possibility of accomplishing it, by meeting with a few numbers of the Astrologer's Magazine and Philosophical Miscellany, published in 1793; in page 25 of which magazine, we find the following brief remarks concerning Mr. Ranger, contained in the letter of H. D. to the the Editor of that work.

"It gives me great satisfaction to see J. W. has adopted the method of calculating Nativities invented by the learned and ingenious Mr. Ranger, it being the most concise and easy of any ever yet found out, and is performed without the help of tables, with a very great

degree of accuracy; I could wish to see it become universal; the inventor is a man of great abilities in either astrology, physics, or the mathematics." And again, in page 153, of the same magazine, in a letter addressed to the Editor by a person signing himself Arithmos, we find the following inquiry concerning Mr. Ranger's invention.

"N. B.—H. D. in a former number, alluded to a planisphere for astrological calculation, invented by Mr. Ranger. I shall thank him if he will give me a little description of it, and the manner of using it, and where it is to be procured."

"ARITHMOS."

This inquiry by Arithmos most satisfactorily proves, that whatever Mr. Ranger's planisphere might have been, that it was kept a secret in the hands of a few individuals. Which was exactly the case, when I was most desirous of obtaining some information on the subject, about sixteen or seventeen years after the publication of the aforesaid magazine: for, on inquiry, I was informed that Mr. Ranger was, (when living) a gentleman in easy circumstances, and that the few individuals whom he condescended to instruct, each paid him a large sum for being taught the use and construction of his planisphere, and that, consequently, it never was made public. And I was further told, that there were at that time in London, two or three gentlemen, who would teach me their construction for a few guineas. I applied to them, and they told me that they

would instruct me in the method of using Mr. Ranger's planispheres, etc., for the *moderate* sum of *five guineas;* but I thought five guineas too much to give; particularly as I found that I should have the trouble of constructing the instruments myself, whereas I would much rather have had them ready made for my use. These gentlemen were so extremely reserved, that they would not let me see what kind of thing the planisphere was; but very dryly observed, that if I would pay down the five guineas, they would immediately let me see a planisphere, and shew me how to use it. This determined me to decline receiving any instruction from them, as I firmly believed that, by perseverance, I should myself discover the construction of a planisphere, which would answer all the purposes I wished.

I immediately set to work, and in about a month completed the planisphere of the zodiac on a plate of brass twenty inches long. I next projected four planispheres of the twelve divisions of the heavens upon pasteboard, (which are still in my possession) the lines representing the poles, or as they are commonly called the cusps of the houses, were straight lines; but when I applied the planisphere of the zodiac to them, I soon found that the straight lines, except in a very few cases, would not give the proper degrees of the zodiac upon the respective cusps. I then immediately concluded, that not only the line representing the horizon of the place, but also that the lines representing the other divisions, must be curve lines; and after a little more

trouble I discovered the nature of the required curves. I then without delay constructed the curves, or poles, for the ascendant, for the eleventh and twelfth houses, for the latitude of London, in the next place, I projected a planisphere with the said curves, and on applying the planispheres of the zodiac to it, to my very great satisfaction, every degree was given on the cusps exactly as in the table of houses! Thus I succeeded, without any instruction whatever, in discovering a planisphere, or as I may truly say that I had succeeded in inventing a planisphere, which would answer to my wishes. But there still appeared another difficulty to conquer, that as the zodiacal planisphere, which I had invented, would represent the longitude of the planets in the zodiac without latitude, it now remained to introduce the planets with their proper latitude, etc. This by means of spherical trigonometry, and the help of algebra, I soon accomplished, and the result was my invention of that part of the planisphere which I call the quadrant of latitude.

This is a faithful detail of my invention of the planispheres which I now publish, and I believe there is no candid person but will own that I am as much entitled to the honour of their invention, as Lord Napier was to that of his Logarithms, as may be plainly seen if you refer to the account given in Dr. Hutton's Philosophical and Mathematical Dictionary, under the article Napier; you will find that Dr. Hutton has there stated, "That one Dr. Craig, a Scotchman, coming out of

Denmark into his own country, called upon John Neper, Baron of Marcheston near Edinburgh, and told him, among other discourses, of a new invention in Denmark (by Longomontanus as 'tis said) to save the tedious multiplication and division in Astronomical Calculations. Neper was very solicitous to know farther of him concerning this matter, but he could give no other account of it, than that it was by proportional numbers, which hint Neper taking, he desired him at his return to call upon him again; Craig, after some weeks had passed did so, and Neper then showed him a rude draught of that he called "Canon Mirabilis Logarithmorum." Which draught, with some alterations, he printed in 1614. It came forthwith into the hands of our author Briggs, and into those of William Oughtred, from whom the relation of this matter came." Thus we see that a man of a studious mind and industrious habits from a very slender hint, will proceed to the discovery and perfecting of inventions of the most useful and curious nature.

Having, as before mentioned, completed a planisphere for the latitude of London, it needed no argument to convince me that much more must still be done. To render the calculation by the planispheres universal, it would be necessary to have a complete set of poles of elevation, or curves for describing the cusps of the houses from the equator to every degree, as far as to sixty degrees of latitude. But, in order to do this correctly, it was requisite that a separate table should be

calculated to each degree of latitude throughout, and thereby determine the measure of each ordinate of declination corresponding to a given quantity of ascensional difference in various parts of each curve, and thereby determine the form and extent of every curve, or pole of elevation, with the greatest accuracy. I completed these and many other tables, which I found would be necessary for carrying the planispheres to the utmost perfection, in all, nearly a hundred tables, many of which required great labor in the calculation: very few persons would scarcely believe what immense toil it has been to construct these planispheres; I shall now proceed to give a short detail of the vast pains taken by me in the operative department of this work.

I had found by experience, that by the usual methods of projecting on paper or on pasteboard, however numerous the ordinates may be, or however carefully the lines may be drawn through the points terminating each ordinate, nevertheless, the line of curvature thereby produced would not be so perfect as it ought to be. I therefore discovered a very far superior, and in fact, the only accurate method that can be used for obtaining the various lines for the planispheres quite perfect, which is this, I determined that instead of using paper or pasteboard for the various projections, I would use plates of sheet brass, about the twentieth of an inch in thickness, made perfectly smooth and level. In this manner I began with the planisphere of the zodiac, or ecliptic slider, this I divided into a double set of parts, of three

hundred and sixty each, the ordinates of declination were next set off, and then a line was drawn at more than a quarter of an inch from where the ordinates terminate, and then by a particular mechanical process, which did not bend or strain the metal, the superfluous metal was cut off, and to complete the curve, by means of files made expressly for the purpose, which were made as nearly as possible to the figure of the curve, the figure of the ecliptic was completed by filing away, with the greatest care and circumspection, the remaining superfluous metal close to the points terminating the ordinates, which points were as fine as the point of a fine needle. After this, the zodiacal longitude of every fifth degree was determined with very great care and accuracy. By this process, the right ascension of every fifth degree of the zodiac having been first calculated to great nicety, the corresponding ordinates were very carefully projected, from the equator to the extremity of the curve, and thus the beginning and ending of every fifth degree of the whole zodiac was determined; and lastly, each space of five degrees was again very carefully subdivided by a pair of the very best and finest pointed spring and screw divider-compasses that could be procured.

A similar process and equal care was used in constructing in like manner on plates of metal the patterns for the sixty-four poles of elevation in which consists the most valuable and also the most laborious part of my performance. Some of these curves required sixty,

and some a greater number of ordinates in their projection. In forming the planisphere of the zodiac, I determined its line of curvature by the projection of no fewer than two hundred and forty ordinates of declination. The zodiac alone occupied a whole month in its construction, to say nothing of the great deal of time and labor spent in preparing the necessary tools and apparatus for the work, and to do the work more effectually, it was absolutely necessary to invent several new instruments; also a number of very accurately divided scales, done on well planished and polished strong plates of brass, which were divided by a machine invented on purpose, at considerable expense and with great labor for its construction. The construction of the aforesaid metallic curves for the poles of the different latitudes, and the scales they required, furnished nearly eight months of incessant toil, exclusively of the time spent in calculating the tables made use of in constructing them, and required upwards of sixty square feet of metal.

The brass planisphere of the zodiac was made and used for a pattern whereby to draw upon the copper-plate, No. 3, a firm and correct line of the curvature of the ecliptic. In other respects, and with the exception of cutting away superfluous metal, (which was not cut away in plate, No 3,) this plate required the same trouble and the same processes as were used in constructing the brass planisphere. There were upwards of twenty thousand trigonometrical calculations, etc., required to obtain the tables used in their construction.

I had many years ago by the help of Callet's Mathematical Tables calculated the right ascension of every degree of the zodiac to the nearest second in each. I also calculated, by the same mathematical tables, a new set of tables of ascensional differences also to seconds, with the intention of constructing tables of oblique ascension to seconds, for every degree of the zodiac, and from one to sixty degrees of latitude; but I have laid aside this design, as I find, now I have completed my set of planispheres, that they are superior in use to the tables of oblique ascension, because the tables of oblique ascension would only serve for the sun, or ecliptic, or for a planet having no latitude. But the grand advantage of the planispheres is, that they solve, with equal ease and certainty, and with much greater despatch, all these phenomena of the planets, etc., both with and without latitude, which are usually resolved with great toil by the voluminous tables, given in some books of astronomy.

This chapter is somewhat longer than I intended, but it could not well have been shorter, either in justice to myself, or to my candid and ingenious readers, who, besides being desirous of knowing the uses, may feel pleasure in hearing the history of the invention, and in knowing something of the methods used in constructing the planispheres; and who will be candid enough to acknowledge that, for so curious and useful a work, which has from the beginning to the end, been many years in preparation, which has cost me a large sum of

money, and has lastly required many months of actual toil and incessant labor for its completion; and taking all these circumstances into their consideration, will I believe, acknowledge that the author has taken every possible pains to give satisfaction, and to render his work attainable to the sons of science at a very moderate price.

CHAPTER II.

The Uses of Plates, Nos. 1 and 2.

In these two plates are comprised the curves corresponding to all the polar elevations from one to sixty degrees. It was at first the author's intention to have given them all in one plate, but he found that where the lines converge in approaching the equator, they would have been so near together that it would have been difficult to distinguish them clearly; therefore for the greater satisfaction of the ingenious student, he has been at the additional trouble and expense of engraving an extra plate. By these two plates, a number of interesting problems in astronomy may be solved with very little more trouble than inspection, amongst which are the following.

PROBLEM I.

Required to find the length of the longest day and shortest night in all places between the equator and sixty degrees of latitude.

EXAMPLE I.

Find the longest day and shortest night for Madras in the East Indies, whose latitude is 13° 4′ North, and also for the city of Edinburgh in Scotland, in latitude 55° 58′ North.

Here we use the nearest degrees, viz. 13_0 and 56° which are sufficiently near. We have only to look in plate, No. 1, for Madras, and see where the tropic of ♋ intersects the curve for latitude 13°, and a perpendicular let fall from this point of intersection to the equator on the evening side of the planisphere, touches upon 6h. 23m., which doubled is 12h. 46m. the length of the longest day at Madras, and the 6h. 23m. is the time of the sun setting; therefore if 6h. 23m. be taken from 12h. there will remain 5h. 37m., which is the length of half the night, which doubled gives 11h. 14m. the length of the shortest night at Madras.

Now look in plate, No. 2, for latitude 56°, and proceed in the same manner, and you will find that the perpendicular falls on 8h. 40m. which is half the length of the day, and doubled gives 17h. 20m. for the length of the longest day; and 17h. 20m. taken from 24h., leaves 6h. and 40m. for the length of the shortest night in Edinburgh. It may be proper to remark that this problem contains in itself several other problems, which for sake of distinctness shall be treated of separately.

PROBLEM II.

Required to find the ascensional difference of the sun, moon, or planet in any latitude not exceeding sixty degrees.

RULE.

Find in the ephemeris, (or by other means) the declination of the sun, moon, or planet, then take the scale of declinations, and lay it flat upon either of the plates, No. 1, or 2, as occasion may be; let the equater of the scale of declinations exactly coincide with the equator of the planisphere, and draw the scale backwards or forwards upon the planisphere, until the given declination upon the scale shall touch the curve for the latitude of the place, and perpendicular thereunto upon the equator of the planisphere, you will immediately find the ascensional difference sought.

EXAMPLE I.

Find the ascensional difference of the sun, or moon, etc., when its declination is 20° North, in the latitude of Edinburgh.

By moving the scale of declinations backward or forward as before directed, until 20° on the scale shall exactly touch the curve of 56° of latitude, and close to the edge of the scale upon the equator of the planisphere, you find 32° and two thirds, which is the ascensional difference sought.

EXAMPLE II.

To find the sun's ascensional difference when his declination is 23° 28′ (either North or South) in the latitude of Edinburgh.

By proceeding as before directed, you will find the ascensional difference is 40° very nearly.

PROBLEM III.

To find the time of the sun's rising and setting in any part of the world, from the equator to 60° of latitude, the sun being in any given degree of the zodiac on a given day, as found in the ephemeris.

RULE.

Place the ecliptic slider or planisphere of the zodiac, so that its equator may coincide with the equator of plates, No. 1, or 2, (as occasion may be) and bring that degree of the zodiac on the edge of this slider, to touch the curve for the latitude of the place, and the perpendicular which falls from that point upon the equator of plates, No. 1, or 2, will shew the time of sun rising on the morning side of plates, No. 1, and 2, and the time of his setting on the evening side of the same plates.

EXAMPLES.

It is desired to know what time the sun will rise and set at Constantinople, in latitude 41° North, and also at Edinburgh on the 17th day of May, 1830.

On the given day the sun's longitude is ♉ 26″ 1′, and by bringing this degree of zodiac to the curves of latitudes 41 and 56, the time of sun rising at Constantinople, will be found to be 4h. 49m. in the morning, and his setting at 7h. 11m. in the evening; and at Edinburgh the sun will rise at 3h. 55m. in the morning, and set at 8h. 5m. in the evening.

Note.—This result by the planispheres is the true times of the sun's rising and setting at the respective places, but the effect of refraction will make the sun appear to rise earlier in the morning, and set later in the evening. This difference between the true and apparent is various, at different times of the year, and in different latitudes, the least difference being 2′ 12″, and the greatest, about 7′ 33″, but it is not necessary to regard it unless very great accuracy be required. Neither is it necessary to calculate what the sun's declination will be in the morning and in the evening, as the sun's place and declination at noon will be a due medium between them, or nearly so.

CHAPTER III.

Description and Uses of Plate, No. 3.

THIS part of the work I call the ecliptic slider, or planisphere of the zodiac, because the curved line on its upper side corresponds to the twelve signs of the zodiac, and represents the sun's path in the ecliptic, and each sign is marked with the usual astronomical characters, ♈ ♉ ♊, etc. I have taken the pains to divide each sign into thirty degrees, which are marked, 10, 20, and every fifth degree is distinguished by a longer stroke than the rest; so that every degree throughout the 360, will be easily seen, and the fraction of a degree may as easily be found with sufficient accuracy, for all the purposes required of this instrument.

To make this instrument the more useful and acceptable, there are two lines of right ascension engraven upon it, of 360 degrees each; the upper line of right ascensions are right ascensions in time, or the line of hours, because each degree is made to correspond with four minutes of time, and fifteen degrees to one hour. It is accordingly marked with all the twenty-four hours and minutes contained in a natural day. The lower

line of right ascensions is upon the extreme edge of the planisphere, divided and numbered so as to correspond exactly with the upper line; it will be found of great use in measuring expeditiously the diurnal and semi-diurnal, and nocturnal arcs, you may also instantly measure off the arcs of direction, upon the genethliacal planisphere by it, even more expeditiously than by a pair of compasses, and for several other purposes as will be shown in this treatise. The line called the line of houses, will be explained in the second part of this work.

The line marked January, February, March, etc., is a line of unequal parts, and corresponds to the sun's motion in right ascension for every day in the year, this line will be found useful in a number of astronomical problems, more especially in the genethliacal department of the science it will be found of great utility, as it serves as a universal scale of years, for turning the arcs of direction into time, in the calculation of nativities, etc., as will be more fully explained in the second part of this book.

Observe.—When the declination of the sun, star or planet, and the latitude of the place are both of the same name, that is, both North or both South; and if the declination of the sun, star or planet, be equal to, or be greater than, the complement of the latitude of the place to 90°. In this case the celestial object will not set, but will continue to revolve above the horizon once in twenty

four hours, and is then said to be in the circle of perpetual apparition. But when the declination of any celestial object is equal, or greater than the complement of the latitude of the place, and of a contrary name, then it will never rise, but will continue to revolve below the horizon, and is said to be in the circle of perpetual occultation.

That the student may know by the planisphere when either of these cases happen, a line of co-latitudes is engraved upon the planisphere of the zodiac as far as for 60° of latitude; and this problem will be solved, by applying the sun or planet's declination, from A towards B, on the scale of co-latitudes.

PROBLEM I.

To find the right ascension of the sun, or of a planet without latitude, by the planisphere of the zodiac.

RULE.

The given degree of zodiacal longitude is immediately found on the upper edge of the instrument, and perpendicular thereunto on the line of right ascensions you will find the right ascension required.

EXAMPLE.

Required the right ascension of the sun, or of any planet without latitude, in ♌, 4° 0′.

By observing 4° of ♌, on the extreme edge of the ecliptic and perpendicular thereunto on the right ascensions, is 126⅓°, the right ascension sought.

N. B.—It is on the very extreme edge, that you are to reckon the zodiacal longitudes, and not upon the same marks any lower down.

PROBLEM II.

To find the right ascension of the moon, or any other planet having latitude, either North or South of the ecliptic.

RULE AND EXAMPLE COMBINED.

Being provided with a piece of paper about eight inches broad, and two or three inches longer than your ecliptic slider, with a straight edged ruler, draw a line to represent the equator, the whole length of your paper, (see the diagram of right ascensions with latitude in plate, No. 10,) then take the ecliptic slider, and let the equator of the slider exactly coincide with the equator drawn on your paper. While this is fixed, either with a very fine pointed black lead pencil, or with a steel drawing pen, (such as is in a pocket case of mathematical instruments,) draw the curved line of the eclip tic, and with the pointrel or a fine needle, make a dot in the proper degree, etc., of the planet's longitude, and if there are several planets which have latitude, as in calculating a nativity, let all their zodiacal longitudes be marked before you remove the ecliptic slider, and then all of them will be done almost with as little trouble as if there were only one. Next take the quadrant of latitude, and place that end of the quadrant marked ♈, or ♎, exactly to touch the beginning of ♈, or ♎, and also place that end of the quadrant marked ♋, or ♑, so that it shall exactly coincide with the beginning of ♋, if the planet be in the signs, ♈, ♉, ♊, ♋, ♌, or ♍; but if the planet's longitude be in ♎, ♏, ♐, ♑, ♒, or ♓, you must place the end of the quadrant marked ♋ or ♑, so as to coincide exactly with the beginning of ♑, and the end marked ♈, or ♎, to touch the beginning of ♎, if the planets be in ♎, ♏, or ♐; but if in ♑, ♒, or ♓, then let that part of the quadrant marked ♋, or ♑, be upon 0° 0′ of ♑, and the other rest upon 0° 0′ ♈.

The quadrant being thus fixed according to the planet's longitude, you have only to bring the edge of the index of latitude, close to the point marked off for the planet's longitude, then draw a line about an inch long, both on the North side and on the South side of the zodiac, (or line of the ecliptic,) the line thus drawn is the line of the planet's latitude from the ecliptic. Then by sliding the scale of declinations along the equator, find what the planet's declination would be if it had no latitude; then find how much the declination in the ecliptic is increased or decreased, by the planet's having latitude, this increase or decrease may be immediately found by the little table here subjoined, and an example will render this quite clear. And observe, that when great exactness is not required, the centre of the index or edge of the straight ruler may be set to the 45o upon the quadrant of latitude, but when great accuracy is desired; place the index or edge of the ruler in the manner directed in the notes at the conclusion of this second problem.

A CONCISE TABLE,

To turn degrees of the moon or planet's latitude into degrees etc., of declination.

Long.	1° Lat. North.	1° Lat. South.	Long.	Long.	1° Lat. South.	1° Lat. North.	Long.
Deg.	Declin. Min.	Declin. Min.	Deg.	Deg.	Declin. Min.	Declin. Min.	Deg.
0 ♈	55	55	30	0 ♎	55	55	30
10	55	55	20	10	55	55	20
20	55½	55½	10	20	55½	55½	10
0 ♉	56	56¼	0 ♍	0 ♏	56	56¼	0 ♐
10	56¾	57	20	10	56¾	57	20
20	57½	58	10	20	57½	58	10
0 ♊	58½	58¾	0 ♌	0 ♑	58½	58¾	0 ♒
10	59¼	59¼	20	10	59¼	59¼	20
20	59¾	59¾	10	20	59¾	59¾	10
30	60	60	0 ♋	30	60	60	0 ♓

Observe.—That North latitude in ♈, ♉, ♊, ♋, ♌, ♍, increases the ecliptic declination of a planet; but south latitude decreases its ecliptic declination. And South latitude in ♎, ♏, ♐, ♑, ♒, ♓, increases the ecliptic declination of a planet; but North latitude decreases its ecliptic declination.

PROBLEM.

Required the right ascension of the moon in 20° ♌, with 5° of North latitude.

Having marked off the moon's longitude, 20 ♌, and drawn through that mark the line of latitude as before directed, (which though it requires a good many words to describe the process, nevertheless to perform it is but a moment's work,) now by sliding along the scale of declinations, you find the declination of 20° ♌ to be about 14° 5-6ths or 14° 50′ nearly the ecliptic declination, and by looking in the foregoing little table, you find that 1° of North latitude in 20° of ♌, will give 56′¾ of declination, as 56′¾ is so near to 57′, say 57′, and 57 multiplied by the 5° of latitude, gives 285′, or 4° 45′ the increase of the moon's declination, and 4° 45′ added to 14° 50′, give 19° 35′, the moon's declination North, which marked on the line of latitude by a dot by help of the scale of declinations, will represent the true place of the moon's centre in 20° ♌, and with 5° North latitude; and a perpendicular drawn from that centre to the equator, will mark the right ascension of the moon, which measured by the scale of right ascensions engraved upon the straight edge of the planisphere of the zodiac will be about 144° 1-10th.

Again, for the moon in 20° Leo, with 5° South latitude, by looking in the little table aforesaid, you find that 1° South latitude in 20° Leo, is equal to 57′ of declination, which multiplied by 5° as above, gives 4° 45′, for the decrease of the ecliptic declination, and this 4° 45′ taken from 14° 50′, leaves 10° 5′, the declination of the moon in 20° Leo with 5° South latitude, which 10° 5′ marked by a dot as aforesaid, will shew

the place of the moon's center, and the perpendicular from this center to the equator, will measure 140° 8-10ths, or 140° 48′, nearly which is the right ascension of the moon in 20° Leo, with 5° South latitude.

Having detailed in so simple a manner the method of placing the planets on the planisphere, and of finding their right ascensions, I shall in other parts of this work be very concise, when it is necessary to speak on this subject, observing, once for all, that when any thing is said about measuring the degrees of right ascensions, the diurnal, or semi-diurnal arcs, etc., it should be understood as being done by means of the degrees upon the straight edge of the planisphere of the zodiac, unless it be plainly expressed otherwise.

The figures on the left side of the page, shew where the center of the index, or the straight edge of the ruler should be placed, if you wish to have the right ascensions to a great nicety, with latitudes as far as nine degrees North or South.

For North Latitude in Northern Signs.

Deg.		Deg.		Deg.
87⅓	For 9 N. Latit. to	0	of Aries, and	30 of Virgo.
57	For 9 N. Latit. to	15	of Aries, and	15 of Virgo.
21⅓	For 9 N. Latit. to	15	of Taurus, and	15 of Leo.
3	For 9 N. Latit. to	15	of Gemini, and	15 of Cancer.

For South Latitude in Northern Signs.

Deg.		Deg.		Deg.
87⅓	For 9 S. Latit. to	0	of Aries, and	30 of Virgo.
75	For 9 S. Latit. to	15	of Aries, and	15 of Virgo.
41	For 9 S. Latit. to	15	of Taurus, and	15 of Leo.
45	For 9 S. Latit. to	15	of Gemini, and	15 of Cancer.

For South Latitude in Southern Signs.

Deg.		Deg.		Deg.
87½	For 9 S. Latit.	to 0	of Libra,	and 30 of Pisces.
57	For 9 S. Latit.	to 15	of Libra,	and 15 of Pisces.
21½	For 9 S. Latit.	to 15	of Scorpio,	and 15 of Aquarius.
3	For 9 S. Latit.	to 15	of Sagittary,	and 15 of Capricorn.

For North Latitude in Southern Signs.

Deg.		Deg.		Deg.
87½	For 9 N. Latit.	to 0	of Libra,	and 30 of Pisces.
75	For 9 N. Latit.	to 15	of Libra,	and 15 of Pisces.
41	For 9 N. Latit.	to 15	of Scorpio,	and 15 of Aquarius.
45	For 9 N. Latit.	to 15	of Sagittary,	and 15 of Capricorn.

When a planet is in any intermediate degree of longitude to those mentioned in the four rules here given, the index, or the edge of the straight ruler, can be placed sufficiently near by estimation to the intermediate mark or degree on the quadrant of latitude; but those who are satisfied with moderate exactness, will most likely content themselves with always using the index or ruler placed on the 45°, which is the average mark.

A TABLE,

To turn degrees of declination into equatorial degrees.

Deg. of Declin.	Value in Equat deg.	Difference.	Deg. of Declin.	Value in Equat. deg.	Difference.
1	0° 47′	47′	16	12° 39′	48′
2	1 34	48	17	13 27	48
3	2 22	46	18	14 15	48
4	3 8	48	19	15 3	49
5	3 56	47	20	15 52	49
6	4 43	48	21	16 41	49
7	5 31	47	22	17 30	49
8	6 18	47	23	18 19	49
9	7 5	48	24	19 8	49
10	7 53	47	25	19 57	50
11	8 40	48	26	20 47	50
12	9 28	47	27	21 37	49
13	10 15	48	28	22 26	51
14	11 3	48	29	23 17	50
15	11 51	48	30	24 7	50
16	12 39	48	31	24 57	51
			32	25 48	

When the declination of a planet, etc., is known by means of the ephemeris, or by any other means, the above table will enable you to turn the degrees and minutes of the sun, moon, or planets declination into degrees and minutes of the equator, and this being done, you may take the equatorial degrees and minutes corresponding thereunto, from the diagonal scale, which I have engraved upon the side of the quadrant of latitude, by using a pair of fine pointed compasses, and in this manner the declinations of the planets can be marked upon the planispheres with surprising exactness.

EXAMPLE.

If a planet have 13° 15′ of declination (either North or South) let it be required to set off this declination to the nearest minute, by means of the diagonal scale upon the quadrant of latitude.

By referring to the foregoing table of declinations, you will see that 13° of declination are equal to 10° 15′ of the equator, and that 14° of declination are equal to 11° 3′ of the equator, and the difference is 48′ of a degree of the equator. Now because the required declination is 13° 15′, or ¼ of a degree more than 13°, therefore ¼ part of the tabular difference must be added to the smaller number given in the table, now the tabular difference being 48′, ¼ part is 12′, and 12′ being added to 10° 15′, the sum is 10° 27′; so that 13° 15′ of declination is equal to 10° 27′ of right ascension. Now the diagonal scale upon the quadrant of latitude, expresses every sixth minute of a degree of right ascension, viz. 6′, 12′, 18′, 24′, 30′, 36′, 42′, 48′, 54′, and 60′, therefore in the present example, look for the 10°, and place one foot of your compasses on the line marked 10°, and extend the other foot of the compasses to the diagonal line, half way between the parallel line marked 24′, and that marked 30′, and this extent will be equal to 10° 27′, of right ascension, which is exactly equal to 13° 15′ of declination as required. Proceed in the same manner when you desire to set off any other declination, to the nearest minute.

PROBLEM III.

To find the oblique ascension of the sun, moon, or planet, or of any degree of the zodiac.

RULE.

Find the ascensional difference by the second problem of the second chapter.

Then, if the declination be north, the difference of the ascensional difference and of the right ascension will be the oblique ascension. But, when the declination is south, add the ascensional difference to the right ascension, and the sum will be the oblique ascension required.

EXAMPLE.

In the latitude of London when the moon is in 20° of ♌ with 5° north latitude, let it be required to find her oblique ascension?

It has been shown by the foregoing problem, that the moon's declination will be about 19° 35' north, now by using the scale of declinations and applying 19° 35' upon that scale till it touches the horizon of London, the perpendicular falling therefrom upon the equator will show the ascensional difference to be about 26° 6-10ths or 26° 36', and then by the last problem, the right ascension was found to be 144° 1-10th, from which subtract 26° 6-10ths and the remainder 117° 5-10ths or 117° 30' is the oblique ascension required.

PROBLEM IV.

To find the oblique descension of the sun, moon, or planet, etc.

This is just the reverse of the last problem. Thus, when the declination is north, add the ascensional difference to the right ascension, and the sum will be the oblique descension.

But when the declination is south, subtract the ascensional difference from the right ascension and the remainder will be the oblique descension required. This is so obvious as not to require an example.

N. B. These two last rules for oblique ascensions and descensions are for places situated in north latitudes, and therefore must be reversed for all places situated south of the equator, as the Cape of Good Hope, etc. etc.

THE

Celestial Planispheres,

PART II.

A NEW, CONCISE AND COMPREHENSIVE

SYSTEM,

OF

Directional Motion,

CONTAINING ALSO

A Complete System of Calculating

NATIVITIES,

BY THE CELESTIAL PLANISPHERES,

Whereby the most laborious and hitherto intricate calculations are solved by drawing a straight line, or simply by

EXTENDING A PAIR OF COMPASSES,

And as much is performed in a few hours, as formerly required many days.

Illustrated by the Nativity of

THE

EMPEROR NAPOLEON.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

THE science of directional motion is in itself sufficiently abstruse, and needs not to be rendered more so by obscure language and difficult expressions; and it is much to be regretted that many authors of eminence, both ancient and modern, have written in so learned a style; that is to say, so obscurely and abstrusely, that they have rendered science a much more difficult attainment, than it would have been if expressed in easy and familiar language. Eminent authors in general are remarkable for a want of condescension in their writings; they are generally desirous of giving dignity to the subjects on which they write, by making use of high sounding words and classical expressions, ill adapted to the generality of readers, in fact, it does appear that they are more desirous of being thought learned and brilliant, than to be useful writers: and the very learned and much admired Placidus, cannot be exempted from this censure; he was past all doubt an eminent mathematician and philosopher, and his works on directional motion are written in so learned and profound a style, as though they were intended for the use of mathemati-

cians and for them only ; but to render a work on that science more generally useful, it should be made more easy and simple, so that any person well versed in common arithmetic, might be able to understand the canons and perform the calculations. There is also another very great impediment to the perfect attainment of this science, which is the absurd figure, or diagram almost always used, and very improperly called a figure of the heavens ; which figure consists of a square and a number of half squares, or triangles cornered and dovetailed into one another like a mosaic pavement. In the name of reason I would ask in what respect can such a tessalated pavement be compared to a figure of the heavens ! The orbits of the planets are nearly circular, the planets themselves are globular, and the lines distinguished by the names of ecliptic and equator, etc., are perfect circles. How excessively absurd then must it be, to represent the figure of the heavens under the similitude of a broken pavement, or of a square of board made up of a number of other squares, cut through their diagonals and clumsily glued together again. Surely it could never have been a man of science who invented so absurd a figure, but some sordid miser, with the view of saving half an inch of paper. I have indeed heard some *careful* persons say, when I have spoken to them of its absurdity, that they thought it took less paper for a *square figure* of the *heavens*, than for a round one : but let us ask why the saving of a bit of paper should be regarded, when it serves no other purpose than to perplex and mislead the understanding ; for with the

square figure before the eyes of the student, it is impossible to explain, in an intelligible manner, the positions of the heavens, and the revolutions of the planets; but by using a circular figure, divided into twelve parts by lines tending towards a centre like the radii or spokes of a wheel, whereon to mark the degrees which occupy the cusps of the celestial houses, and the circle in the middle to represent the globe of our earth, the difficulty immediately vanishes, and we may then explain in a more easy and familiar manner, the mundane and zodiacal motions, both direct and converse, as I shall now endeavor to do in the following chapter.

PLATE 1.

To face page, 40.

The Figure of the Heavens, and of the Motions of the Planets.

sign ♉ occupy the cusp of the second, the sign ♊ will be upon the third house, and the sign ♋ will occupy the cusp of the fourth house, etc., so that the first sign of the zodiac would occupy the first house of the figure, the second sign would be upon the second house of the figure, and so in succession unto the twelfth sign of the zodiac, and the twelfth house of the celestial figure: this would be the position of the heavens to those persons who inhabit the countries situated under the equator or near it, and are said to live in a right sphere, or in a sphere of right ascension. But to those persons who live in places far removed from the equator of the world, as under thirty, forty, fifty, or sixty degrees of latitude, the signs of the zodiac will appear to move obliquely, and they will not be equally divided by the lines called the cusps or polar elevations of the celestial houses; for then it will sometimes happen, that one sign of the zodiac will occupy the cusps of two houses; and again, two signs of the zodiac will be found included in one house of the figure: all this can be clearly shown by the celestial globe, or by my planispheres; but it is impossible to give any proper idea of this matter by the absurd square figure in common use, and this circumstance of intercepted signs is generally very perplexing to beginners in this science.

MOTION OF THE PLANETS.

All the planets move in their orbits according to the succession of the signs of the zodiac, from ♈ to ♉ and from ♉ to ♊, etc., and this motion of the planets in

their orbits is performed in a direction from the west towards the east, being in the very reverse direction of what is called mundane motion; as to the planets being retrograde it is only an apparent motion occasioned by the planet being seen under a certain angle from the earth, for although a planet appears sometimes retrograde to us on the earth, the planet is all the while moving in its proper orbit, according to the regular succession of the signs. But there is another motion which though it is apparent only, as respects the planets themselves, yet to us inhabitants of the earth it is to be considered as a real motion; and this motion which is of the utmost importance to be well understood in the science of directional motion, is called the mundane motion of the planets, and by this motion the planets ascend in the east angle, and move on to the tenth house or meridian, (and their being upon the cusps of the tenth house is commonly called their southing,) and from the tenth house they move by the same motion to the seventh house, or west angle, and from the west unto the fourth house, or lower meridian, and from the fourth house, the planets move onward to the horizon, or east angle; all the varieties of mundane motion being performed in the space of one natural day or twenty-four hours.

After what is been explained and exemplified in the first part of this treatise concerning the diurnal and nocturnal arcs of the planets, it is scarcely necessary here to remark, that the length of the diurnal and nocturnal

arcs of the planets depends upon their own declination and the latitude of the place.

The student would do well to remember all the divisions of the explanatory figure at the beginning of this chapter, as this will render easy every thing relating to the method of calculating directions which will be found in the following chapters: it may be well to add, the whole diurnal arc or space above the horrizon is called the upper hemisphere, and the whole space below the horizon is called the lower hemisphere.

CHAPTER II.

Of aspects and distances, etc.

OF ASPECTS IN THE ZODIAC.

An aspect is a certain distance of two planets: the sextile in the zodiac is 60°, or two signs distant: the quintile is 72°, or two signs and one fifth part of two signs: the quartile is 90°, or three signs: the trine is 120°, or four signs distant: the sesquiquadrate is 135°, or four signs and a half sign more: the biquintile 144°, or the biquintile is four signs and one fifth part of four signs: and the opposition is 180°, or six signs distant. The conjunction is when two planets are in the same sign and degree; some authors do not call this an aspect, but a position only.

OF THE MUNDANE ASPECTS.

The mundane aspects, are computed by the distance of the houses from each other, thus in mundo the space of two houses is the mundane sextile; the space of two houses and of one fifth part of two houses, is the quintile in mundo; the space of three houses is the mundane quartile; the space of four houses is the mundane trine;

the space of four houses and half a house more, is the sesquiquadrate in mundo. One fifth part of four houses added to four houses, constitute the biquintile in mundo. And the distance of six houses is the mundane opposition. The same proportions hold good in respect to the mundane motions of the planets, for when a planet is two thirds of his semi-diurnal arc, or two thirds of his semi-nocturnal arc, distant from the sun, moon, or planet, they are then in mundane sextile to each other. Two thirds of the planet's semi-arc, and one fifth part of the said two thirds, constitute the mundane quintile. The whole semi-arc is the mundane quartile of a planet. The space of the semi-arc and one third of the semi-arc is the mundane trine. The sesquiquadrate in mundo is equal to the semi-arc, and half the semi-arc added to it, or which is the same three parts in four of the whole arc, diurnal or nocturnal of any planet, constitute its mundane sesquiquadrate. The space of the mundane trine with one fifth part of the trine added, is the biquintile in mundo, or which amounts to the same thing, the biquintile is equal to four parts in five of a planet's whole diurnal or nocturnal arc. The whole diurnal arc, or the whole nocturnal arc of a planet, is the mundane opposition of that planet. Observe, that one third part of a planet's semi-diurnal arc is the space of one house of that planet, so also is one third of the semi-nocturnal arc of the planet, and in speaking of the mundane aspects or mundane motions of the planets, the word house is to be understood not as referring to any particular sign of the zodiac, but only to one third of the planets semi-arc, whether reckoned in hours and

minutes of time, or in degrees and minutes of the equator. Thus, when it is said a planet is three parts in five of one house above the ascendant: in this case one third part of the semi-arc is taken and divided by five, whereby we find out what is one fifth part, and the fifth part multiplied by three, gives three fifths, or three parts in five of the semi arc.

N. B. These remarks are not intended for the learned in science but for the benefit of those who wish to learn.

The explanations of the aspects here given being so very explicit, might by some persons be thought quite sufficient for every purpose: but to prevent the possibility of mistake in directing the Medium Celie, and the Ascendant to the different mundane aspects of the planets, (for they must never be directed to the aspects in the zodiac) it may be of service to show how the same is applied to practice by pointing out the places of the celestial figure, where the aforesaid distances of the aspects fall, both from the Ascendant and Medium Celie. But we will begin with the aspects to the Medium Celie.

SEXTILE. A planet on the cusp of the eighth or twelfth house, or at the distance of two thirds of his semi-diurnal arc will be in sextile to the Mid Heaven.

QUINTILE. A planet, when he is four parts in five of his semi diurnal arc distant from the Mid Heaven. Or, when three parts in five of one house, either above the ascendant or above the west angle.

QUARTILE. When at the distance of his whole semi-diurnal arc; or, which is the same, when on the cusp of the ascendant, or on the cusp of the seventh house.

TRINE. When on the cusp either of the second, or sixth house; or, which is the same, when the planet is one third part of his semi-nocturnal arc below the east, or below the west.

SESQUIQUADRATE. When a planet is one house and half a house more below the horizon; or, which is the same, when the planet is half of his semi-nocturnal arc below the east, or west angle.

BIQUINTILE. When a planet is two parts in five of his semi-nocturnal arc from the Imum Celie, or fourth house; or, when he is three parts in five of his semi-nocturnal arc below the horizon.

OPPOSITION. A planet on the cusp of the fourth house is in opposition to the Mid Heaven.

ASCENDANT. The aspects to the ascendant fall in the following places.

SEXTILE. A planet on the cup of the eleventd, or on the cusp of the third house: or, when a planet is two thirds of his semi-diurnal arc above; or, when two thirds of his semi-nocturnal arc below the horizon, he is then the sextile to the ascendant.

QUINTILE. When two houses and one fifth of two

houses either above or below the horrizon; or, when a planet is four parts in five of his semi-diurnal arc above the horizon; or when four parts in five of his semi-nocturnal arc below the horizon; or, which is the same, when a planet is one fifth part of his semi-diurnal arc from the Medium Celie on the east side thereof; or, when one fifth part of his semi-nocturnal arc from the cusp of the fourth house on the east side thereof, at any of these places on the eastern side of the figure, will a planet be in quintile to the ascendant.

QUARTILE. When on the cusp of the tenth or fourth house, or when a planet is at the distance of his semi-diurnal arc above, or when at the distance of his semi-nocturnal arc below the horizon, he is then in quartile to the ascendant.

TRINE. When on the cusp of the ninth or fifth house; or when at the distance of two thirds of his semi-diurnal arc above, or two thirds of his semi-nocturnal arc below the cusp of the seventh house, a planet will be in trine to the ascendant.

SESQUIQUADRATE. At the distance of three fourths of a planet's diurnal arc from the ascendant above the horizon, or when distant from the ascendant three fourths of the planet's nocturnal arc below the horizon, or which is equal to the same, when a planet is at an equal distance between the Mid Heaven and west angle, or when equally distant between the fourth and seventh house, or when a planet is half his semi-diurnal arc

above the west, or when he is half his semi-nocturnal arc below the west he will be in Sesquiquadrate to the Ascendant.

Biquintile. When a planet is two parts in five of his semi-diurnal arc above the west, or when he is two parts in five of his semi-nocturnal arc below the west. Or, when a planet is three parts in five of his semi-diurnal arc from the tenth house towards the west. Or, when a planet is three parts in five of his semi-nocturnal arc from the cusp of the fourth towards the west; he is then in Biquintile to the Ascendant.

Opposition. A planet on the cusp of the west angle, is in Opposition to the Ascendant.

This explicit recapitulation of the places of the Aspects, will be of great service to enable the student without hesitation, to compute the Aspects in the most easy and convenient manner, for in the practice of calculating the directions of a Nativity, it will be found sometimes most convenient to take the distances of the planets from one angle, and sometimes from another, angle of the figure.

Observe also, that the Mid Heaven or tenth, eleventh, twelfth, first, second, and third houses of the figure, are called the eastern or ascending part of the Heaven; and the ninth, eighth, seventh, sixth, fifth, and fourth houses constitute the descending part of the Heaven, or western part of the Heaven.

Further observe, that the distances of planets from the tenth and fourth houses, is taken in degrees and minutes, etc., of right ascension. The distances from the Ascendant are taken in degrees, etc., of oblique ascension, and the distances from the seventh house are taken in degrees, etc., of oblique descension.

If a planet is in the eastern houses, subtract the right ascension of the Mid Heaven from the right ascension of the planet, the remainder will be the planet's distance from the Mid Heaven. But if a planet be in the western part of Heaven, subtract the right ascension of the planet from the right ascension of the Mid Heaven, the remainder will be the planet's distance; or briefly thus, the difference of the right ascensions of the planet and Mid Heaven, will be the distance of the planet from the Mid Heaven.

This last rule holds good equally with respect to finding the distances of the planets from the fourth house; but to make every thing clear, observe, if a planet be in the Ascendant, in the second or third house, subtract the right ascension of the planet from the right ascension of the fourth house, the remainder will be the distance of the planet from the fourth house. But if the planet be in the fourth, fifth, or sixth house, then subtract the right ascension of the fourth house from the right ascension of the planet, the remainder will be the distance of the planet from the fourth house.

The distances from the Ascendant are taken in de-

grees of oblique ascension; subtract the lesser oblique ascension from the greater, be that which ever it may, and the difference will be the planet's distance from the Ascendant.

The distances from the west, or seventh house, are taken in degrees of oblique descension, by subtracting the least from the greatest oblique descension, the remainder will be the planet's distance from the seventh house.

It remains for us to speak of two other kinds of aspects or distances, called Parallels.

PARALLELS IN THE ZODIAC.

The ancient authors called these Antiscions, but the most modern authors call them, with much propriety, Parallels of Declination, because when any planet arrives at a point of the zodiac, where he has the same quantity of declination that some other planet has, he is then in the Parallel of Declination of the other planet, and is considered as deriving some influence from that planet, it matters not whether both planets have North declination, or both South declination, or whether one planet be in the North declination, and the other in the South declination, provided that both have the same number of degrees and minutes, etc., of declination, as the Parallels of Declination in the Heavens are the lesser circles of the sphere, equally distant from the equator, just in the same manner as are the Parallels of geogra-

phical latitude, on the globe of the earth. For example: in the Nativity of the Emperor Napoleon, the planet Venus has 20° 9′ of North declination, therefore the sun or any other planet, when arrived in 20° 9′ of declination, either North or South, will then be in the Parallel of Declination of Venus; and so of any others.

Observe, when the declination of any planet is less than 23° 28′, (the greatest obliquity of the ecliptic)then will there be four different places of the zodiac, where the Parallels of Declination will fall from that planet, two of these places will be in the Northern signs, and two in the Southern signs of the zodiac, which places may be easily found either by the common tables of declination, or by the Planisphere.

OF MUNDANE PARALLELS.

Mundane Parallels are proportional distances of the planets from the cusps of the four cardinal houses, according to the semi-diurnal, or semi-nocturnal arcs of the planets. Thus, when one planet is the distance of one third of his semi-diurnal arc from the Mid Heaven, and upon the cusp of the ninth house, he would be in Mundane Parallel to another planet which was one third of his semi-diurnal arc distant from the Mid Heaven, and upon the cusp of the eleventh house, and in like manner, planets have their Mundane Parallels to each other, at every variety of distances, which distances are thus found by the rule of proportion.

As the semi-diurnal, or semi-nocturnal arc of one planet,
Is to its distance from a given angle or house,
So is the semi-diurnal, or semi-nocturnal arc of another planet,
To its required distance from a given angle or house.

Observe, that one third of the semi-arc, or even one sixth of the semi-arc of each planet, may be used in working the above proportion. Note, one sixth part of a planet's semi-diurnal arc is called its horary time diurnal, and one sixth part of its semi-nocturnal arc is called its horary time nocturnal.

CHAPTER III.

Of Promittors, Significators, and Directions, etc.

PROMITTORS.

THE Promittors are Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Venus and Mercury, these are always Promittors or Planets, promising the accomplishment of some event. Sol and Luna have sometimes the name or quality of Promittors.

SIGNIFICATORS.

Are Sol, Luna, ⊕, Ascendant and Medium Celie, Sol and Luna have, as before said, sometimes the appellation of Promittors, and as such, are reciprocally directed to each other, or to their own aspects, (or rays.)

The Promittors are the planets to which other planets or Significators are directed; and the Significator is the Planet or Aspect to be directed.

OF A DIRECTION.

As an Aspect is a certain distance (as explained in the preceding chapter,) so a Direction is the space which the planet has to move onward, in order to complete the Aspect: it is the calculation of these spaces, which constitutes the art or science of Directions.

POLES OF THE PLANETS.

When a planet is upon the cusp of the Mid Heaven, or when upon the cusp of the fourth house, it has no polar elevation, and would be directed by right ascension; but if it was either on the cusp of the Ascendant, or cusp of the seventh house, then it would have the same polar elevation as the place for which the figure is erected, and would be directed to directions in the zodiac, by tables of oblique ascensions, etc., calculated for the latitude of the same place. But when a planet is located any where between the Mid Heaven and the east or west angle, or when situated any where between the cusp of the fourth and east or west angle the planet will have a polar elevation less than the latitude of the place for which the figure is erected. Thus, for example, the latitude of London is 51° 31′, and the pole of the eleventh and third houses is 23° 48′, and the pole of the twelfth and second houses is 40° 53′. Therefore if a planet was either upon the cusp of the eleventh or third house, his polar elevation would be 23° 48′; and if the planet was upon either the cusp of the twelfth or second house, his pole would be 40° 53′; and if in any intermediate situation, then would the planet have an intermediate polar elevation. Placidus and some other authors say, that when a planet is within 3° of right ascension from the cusp of the tenth or fourth house, that we should direct the planet to the Aspect by right ascensions. But I do not approve of what Placidus says in this respect; because, supposing the polar elevation of a planet was only 1° of latitude, the

ascensional difference for the 30° of aries would be 0° 12′, and for the beginning of cancer, 26′ of a degree, and should we direct, as Placidus would, by right ascensions, the error in the arcs of direction would be 0° 12′ in the one instance, and 0° 26′ in the other; even under the pole of 1°; but under the pole of 2°, the error would be double. It is full as well to be more exact, particularly when we have all the instruments, or means requisite, and when it takes us no more trouble.

CIRCLES OF POSITION.

Some authors have, in some instances, confounded Polar Elevations and circles of Position with each other, as though they were one and the same thing. But there is, or ought to be, a great distinction between them. The Circle of Position of any planet is not the pole of that planet, but it is a certain point upon the equator, where the pole of the planet intersects the equator, and may always be found by the following analogy;

As the semi-arc of a planet, diurnal or nocturnal,
Is to 90° of the equator,
So is the distance of the planet in right ascension,
from the tenth or fourth house,
To the distance in right ascension of the planet's
circle of position, from the tenth or fourth house
upon the equator.

Now observe, that the difference between the planet's Circle of Position's distance from either Meridian, and the distance of the planet itself from that Meridian, will be the ascensional difference of that planet, under the planet's own true Pole of Elevation. (See Appendix.)

Of Direct Directions in the Zodiac,

Are the Directions in which the Significator is carried forward, according to the succession of the signs, unto the completion of the Aspect, under the Significators own pole of elevation.

Thus, for example, in the Nativity of the Emperor Napoleon, let it be required to direct the ☉ to the sextile of ♀ in zodiac; in this Nativity we find ♀ in 7° 1′ ♋ and consequently the sextile of ♀ falls in ♏ 7° 1′; now we must proceed to calculate the right ascension and declination of ♏ 7° 1′, the place of this Aspect having been found, next find the ascensional difference of the same under the Sun's own pole of elevation, and after having found the ascensional difference, find thereby the oblique ascension of this place of Aspect, and lastly, from the oblique ascension of the sextile of ♀ thus found, subtract the oblique of the ☉ under his own pole, and the remainder will be the arc of direction of the ☉, to the sextile of ♀ in the zodiac.

Having erected the figure of Napoleon's Nativity to the exact time given in Mr. Worsdale's publication of the same geniture, I shall therefore direct the Sun under the same pole as Mr. Worsdale uses, viz. the pole of 15° 43′. This direction shall be calculated by spherical trigonometry in the following manner.

The Sun is in ♌ 22° 43′ or 52° 43′ from the beginning of ♋.

For the Right Ascension of the Sun.

As Radius, Sine of 90°		10.00000
Is to Co-sine of Obliquity of Ecliptic	23° 28′	9.96251
So is Co-tangent of longitude of ☉ from 0° 0′ ♋	52° 43′	9.88158
To Co-tangent of Right Ascension from 0° 0′ ♋	55° 4′	9.84409
Now to the Right Ascension of 0° 0′ ♋	90° 0′	
Add the Right Ascension of ☉ from ♋	55° 4′	
The sum is the Sun's Right Ascension	145° 4′	

To find the Sun's Declination.

As Radius, Sine of 90°		10.00000
Is to the Sine of Sun's greatest Decl.	23° 28′	9.60012
So is Co-sine of the Sun's Longitude from 0° 0′ ♋	52° 43′	9.78230
To Sine of Sun's Delination North,	13° 57½′	9.38242
The Tangent of 13° 57½′ is		9.39542

To find the Sun's Ascensional Difference.

As Radius, Sine of 90°		10.00000
Is to Tangent of Sun's own Pole	15° 43′	9.44933
So is Tangent of Sun's Declination	13° 57½′	9.39542
To Sine of the Sun's Ascensional diff.	4° 1′	8.84475

For the Sun's Oblique Ascension.

From the Right Ascension of the Sun	145° 4′
Subtract Ascensional difference	4° 1′
The Oblique Ascension of Sun under his own Pole is	141° 3′

The next place to find the Right Ascension, etc., of ♏ 7° 1′, the place of Venus's Sextile.

For the Right Ascension.

As Radius		10.00000
Is to Co-sine of Sun's greatest declination	23° 28′	9.96251
So is Co-tangent of Aspect's longitude from Cancer,	67° 1′	9.62750
To Co-tangent of Right Ascension from Cancer,	68° 45′	9.59001
To the Right Ascension of 0_{o} of Cancer,	90° 0′	
Add the Aspect's Right Ascension from 0° of Cancer	68° 45	
The sum is the Right Ascension of the Aspect,	158° 45	

To find the Declination of the Aspect.

As Radius, Sine of 90°		10.00000
Is to Sine of the Sun's greatest declination 23° 28′		9.60012
So is Co-sine of the longitude from 0° 6′ Cancer	67° 1′	9.59158
To Sine of Aspect's Declination,	8° 57′	9.19170
The Tangent of Declination,	8° 57′	9.19725

For the Ascensional Differenee.

As Radius,		10.00000
Is to Tangent of the Sun's Pole	15° 43′	9.44933
So is Tangent of the Aspect's Declination	8° 57′	9.19725
To Sine of its Ascensional difference	2° 32′	8.64658

For the Oblique Ascension of the Aspect.

From the Aspect's Right Ascension	168° 45′
Subtract the Ascensional difference	2° 32′
Remains the Oblique Ascension of the Sextile of Venus under the Pole of the Sun	156° 13′

For the Arc of Direction.

From the Oblique Ascension of the Sextile of Venus under the Pole of the Sun	156° 13′
Subtract the Oblique Ascension of the Sun under his own Pole	141° 3′
The Arc of Direction of the Sun to the Sextile of Venus in Zodiac	15° 10′

To equate the Arc of Direction, and point out the time of the accident or event.

To the Sun's Right Ascension at the time of Birth	145° 4′
Add the Arc of Direction	15° 10′
	160° 14′

Next find the degree of longitude in the zodiac which corresponds to 160° 14′ of right ascension which is equal to 70° 14′ from the beginning of Cancer, this may be done either by the Tables of right ascensions, or by spherical trigonometry.

As Radius,		10.00000
Is to Co-sine of Sun's greatest declination	23° 28′	9.96251
So is Tangent of Right Ascension from Cancer	70° 14′	10.44446
To Tangent of longitude from Cancer	68° 36′	10.40697

which answers to 8° 36' of the sign Virgo, look in the Ephemeris for the year of the Birth, in this case in the Ephemeris for the year 1769, see how many days of 24 hours each the Sun requires to arrive in 8° 36' of Virgo, and for every complete day allow one year, and for two hours reckon one month. By the Ephemeris for 1769, we find that the Sun arrived at 8_0 36' of Virgo, on the 31st day of August, at 9 hrs. P. M., being 16 days and about 11 hours after Birth, and therefore points out the time of the accident to be 16 years and about five months and a half of the Native's age.

The practice of equating the arc of direction by adding the arc to the sun's right ascensional birth, and finding the corresponding zodiacal longitude of the sun in the ephemeris, which I believe to be the only true method, was discovered and published by Placidus de Titus, about one hundred and eighty years ago; though I am of opinion that the celebrated Ptolemy intended this very method, his writings being very brief and obscure, no philosopher or mathematician but Placidus only, had the penetration and sagacity to give us the true reading of what Ptolemy had delivered on this subject.

Observation. Had the proceeding direction been calculated by the tables of oblique ascensions, the work would have appeared shorter to the eyes of the unexperienced, although in reality it requires both more time and more trouble; than by the method I have used; but whether we calculate by the common method, or whether we work by spherical trigonometry, to calculate all the directions of a Nativity is a work of vast labor and re-

quires much patience, and whatever degree of exactness we may acquire thereby in the calculations, it will scarcely ever make amends for the trouble bestowed in the process; but my Planispheres will be found to perform the calculations with wonderful expedition, and yet sufficiently exact for every reasonable purpose.

The Directions in the zodiac may be calculated in a manner nearly similar to Mundane Directions by taking the distances of both the Significator and of the Promittor or place of Aspect from a given angle or house of the figure, and finding the semi-arc, etc., of both the Significator and the place of the Aspect and then working by the rule of proportion as you would in calculating a Mundane Direction, thus for

EXAMPLE.

Calculate the direction of the Sun to the Sextile of Venus.

In the Nativity of Napoleon the Right Ascension of the Mid Heaven is	112°	59′
Right Ascension of the Sun	145	4
Right Ascension of the Aspect	158	45
Therefore the distance of Sun from Mid Heaven is	32	5
The Aspect's distance from the Mid Heaven	45	46
The Semi-diurnal Arc of Sun under Lat. 41° 40′ is	102	46
Semi-diurnal Arc of the place of the Aspect under the Latitude of 41° 40′ is	97	57

The proportion when stated may be either worked by the rule of three, but quicker by the tables of proportional logarithms, thus.

If the Semi-diurnal Arc of the Sun	102°	46'	log.	2.434
Gives his distance from the Tenth	32	5	,,	7.490
What will Semi-diurnal Arc of the Aspect	97	57	,,	2.643
Sum of second and third logarithms				10.133
Subtract first logarithm				2.434
The answer will be the secondary distance of the Aspect from Mid Heaven	30°	35'	=	7.699
Then from the primary distance of Aspect				45° 46
Subtract its secondary distance				30 35
Remains Arc of Directions of Sun to the Sextile of Venus in Zodiac				15 11

Which is one minute of a degree different from the Arc as before calculated, a difference indeed not worth regarding.

N. B. In calculating the Directions in the Zodiac, observe, when the Significator (or planet to be directed) is posited in the descending part of the Heaven that you must use the oblique ascensions of the opposite place in the Zodiac of the Significator, and also of the opposite place of the Aspect, which will produce the same result as though you had calculated by the oblique descensions, and is generally considered a more convenient process; however, it is right to observe, that when you work by the oblique ascensions of the opposite place, it is requisite to add 180° in each case, to the right ascension of

the Significator, etc., and when the sum exceeds 360°, cast away 360 and use the excess above 360°.

Of Converse Directions in the Zodiac.

This shall be exemplified by directing the Sun to the body of Saturn in the zodiac, by Converse Motion. (In the Nativity of Napoleon.)

The Pole of Saturn is thus calculated according to the common method.

As ⅓ Semi-diurnal Arc of Saturn	36°	40′	.6910
Is to the Pole of the eleventh	16	47	1.0304
So is Saturn's distance from the Mid Heaven	4	47	1.5755
			2.6059
		Subtract	.6910
To the Pole of Saturn		2° 11′	1.9149

Note, for the true method of finding the correct polar elevations of the planets, when much accuracy is required, see my own method as explained in the Appendix.

The Right Ascension of Saturn is	117.46
The Right Ascension of the Sun as before found	145.4

To find the Ascensional Difference of Saturn, under his own Polar Elevation.

As Radius			10.00000
Is to Tangent of Saturns Pole		2° 11′	8.58121
So is Tangent of Saturn's Declination	21	5 (north)	9.58606
To Sine of Saturn's Ascl. difference	0	51 (nearly)	8.16727

To find the Ascensional Difference of the Sun, under the Pole of Saturn.

As Radius		10 00000
Is to Tangent of Pole of Saturn	2° 11'	8.58121
So is Tangent of the Sun's Declination	13 57	9.39515
To Sine of Sun's Ascensional Difference	0 33	7.97636

For the Oblique Ascensions.

From the Right Ascension of the Sun	145° 4
Subtract the Ascensional Difference	0 33
The Oblique Ascension of the Sun is	144 31
From the Right Ascension of Saturn	117 46
Subtract Saturn's Ascensional Difference	0 51
The Oblique Ascension of Saturn under his own Pole, is	116 55

For the Arc of Direction.

From the Oblique Ascension of the Sun	144 31
Subtract Saturn's Oblique Ascension	116 55
The Arc of Direction of Sun to the body of Saturn in the Zodiac, is	27 36

In Converse Directions in the zodiac as may be seen by the preceeding example the Significator is directed under the polar elevation of the Promittor; but more correctly speaking, the fact is this, that the Significator remains in his first position, and the Promittor is in reality the planet directed, not by a Converse, but by a Direct motion to the Aspect or Significator in the zodiac.

RULE.

How to direct any planet to Aspects in the zodiac with latitude.

When any Significator, as for example, the Moon, having latitude at the place of the Aspect, is required to be directed to any Aspect in the zodiac, let her latitude at the place of the Aspect be found by means of an Ephemeris, etc., then her right ascension, declination, oblique ascension, etc., must be found thereunto: then take the oblique ascension of the Moon, (or planet,) at the place she is in at the time of birth, from the oblique ascension of the place of the Aspect as aforesaid, and the difference will be the Arc of Direction required, under the Moon's or planet's own proper pole of elevation.

CHAPTER IV.

The Calculation of Mundane Directions.

PROVIDED that proper attention has been paid to what has been delivered in the first and second chapters, concerning the division of the figure of the heavens, the Aspects and Distances, etc., it is the Author's opinion, that the rules and processes contained in this chapter, will be easily understood by the intelligent reader.

GENERAL RULES.

1st. The twelve houses being divided (see chapter 1) into four quadrants, namely, from the cusp of the first to the cusp of the fourth house, is the first quadrant. From the cusp of the fourth unto the cusp of the seventh is the second quadrant. From the cusp of the seventh to the meridian or tenth, is the third quadrant, and from the cusp of the tenth unto the cusp of the Ascendant or horoscope, is the fourth quadrant.

Observe, when the Aspect is completed in the same quadrant in which the planet is posited (at the moment of birth) that the difference between the primary and secondary distance will be the Arc of Direction.

RULE II.

But if the Aspect be completed in a different quadrant to that in which the planet is posited, then must the secondary distance projected on the other side of a dedeterminate angle or house be added to the primary distance of the planet on this side of the same angle or house, and the sum will be the Arc of Direction required.

These two general rules contain in themselves a summary of the method of Mundane Directions; but as I am desirous that every one who reads this work may perfectly understand the processes of calculation, I have added the following particular rules also; all from my own Manuscript Treatise, written about twenty years ago, for the purpose of refreshing my own memory in this science, however long I might have laid aside the study and practice of it: and these Rules and Remarks have completely answered the purpose; for on just reading them once over, I recollected every process as well as if I had been in the daily practice of making such calculations.

Direct Directions in Mundo.

RULE I.

The Significator's Arc, or double horary times are placed first, in the second place is put the Significator's Distance from an angle or house; in the third place is put the Promittors, double horary times, or arc (diurnal if above the earth when the Aspect is completed,) but the nocturnal double horary times, or arc, etc., must be taken if the Aspect be finished below the earth: the

fourth number or answer is the Promittor's secondary distance from the determinate angle, or house, whence the Aspect is formed; which is to be subtracted from the said Promittor's primary distance, if produced in the same quadrant in which the primary distance was taken, and the remainder will be the arc of direction. But if the Promittor's secondary distance be projected in a different quadrant to that in which the said Promittor is found in the nativity, the sum of the primary and secondary Distances will then be the Arc of Direction required.

Thus by Proportion.

As the Significator's Double Horary times, or Semi-arc,
Is to its Distance above or below a certain House or Angle,
So is the Promittor's Double Horary times, or Semi-arc,
To the Promittor's secondary Distance above or below a certain House.

RULE II.

Converse Direction in Mundo.

In the Converse Directions, the Promittor remains at rest, and the Significator is carried on to the completion of the Aspect. The numbers of the Proportion are thus disposed.

As the Promittor's Double Horary times, or Semi-arc,
Is to its Distance above or below a certain Angle or House,
So is the Significator's Semi-arc, or Double Horary times,
To the Significator's secondary Distance above or below a certain House.

And if the Aspect be completed in the same quadrant

then will the difference between the primary and secondary distance, be the Arc of Direction. But, if the Aspect be completed in another quadrant, than that in which the Significator is posited in the figure of birth, then must the Significator's secondary distance projected on the other side of a determinate house or angle, be added to the said Significator's primary distance on this side of the same angle or house, the sum will be the Arc of Direction.

The four following rules, enumerating each of the houses of the Celestial Figure respectively, in which the Mundane Directions are completed, will include every thing that need be desired, in this department of the science.

RULE. III.

Let it be remembered, the Mundane Motions of the planets are all in reality performed conversely as repects the houses of the celestial figure. Therefore the planet which is really brought by a converse motion to the proportional distance of another planet, if the said planet so carried onward by converse motion, be posited in the first, second, or third house, and completes the Aspect above the horizon, then must its secondary distance above the horizon, be added to the said planet's distance (in oblique ascension) from the horoscope, and the sum of the two distances will be the Arc of Direction. But if the planet so posited in the first, second, or third house, completes the Aspect in the first, second,

or third house, then will the difference between the primary and secondary distance be the Arc of Direction required.

RULE IV.

In like manner of any planet be posited in the twelfth, eleventh, or tenth house, and completes the Aspect while posited in the twelfth, eleventh, or tenth house, the difference between the primary and secondary distance will be the arc of direction required: But had the Aspect been completed in the ninth, eighth, or seventh house, then must the secondary distance from the meridian towards the West, be added to the planet's primary distance from the meridian, (on the Eastern side) and the sum will be the arc of direction required.

RULE V.

If the planet, which is to be carried onward to the Aspect by its own converse motion, be posited in the ninth, eighth or seventh house, if he complete the Aspect while in the 9th, 8th, or 7th house, the difference between his primary and secondary distance from the tenth or seventh house, will be the Arc of Direction. But if any planet be posited in either of the three aforesaid houses, if to complete the Aspect the said planet be carried below the horizon, then must the secondary distance below the West, be added to his primary distance above the West, and the sun will be the Arc of Direction required.

RULE VI.

If any planet posited in the sixth, fifth, or fourth

house, completes the Aspect while posited in the sixth, fifth, or fourth house, then will the difference between its primary and secondary distance from the seventh or fourth house, be the Arc of Direction. But if, to complete the Aspect, the planet moves onward into the third, second, or first house, then must the secondary distance from the fourth be added to its primary distance from the fourth house, and the sum will be the Arc of Direction required.

By way of example, in the Nativity of Napoleon, let it be required to direct the sun to the parallel of Venus in Mundo, by direct direction.

The Right Ascension of the Mid Heaven, is	112° 59'
The Right Ascension of Venus, subtract	97 29
Venus's Primary Distance from Mid Heaven	15 30
The Right Ascension of the Sun, is	145 4
The Right Ascension of the Mid Heaven, subtract	112 59
The Sun's Primary Distance from the Mid Heaven	32 5

The Proportion is thus stated, and worked by the Proportional Logarithms.

As ⅓ the Semi-diurnal Arc of the Sun	34° 16'	.7204
To his Distance from the Mid Heaven	32 5	.7490
So is ⅓ the Semi-diurnal Arc of Venus	36 20	.6950
		1.4440
	Subtract	.7204
To Venus's Secon. Dist. from the tenth	34 1	.7236
Subtract Venus's Primary Distance	15 30	
And the Arc of Direction will be	18 31	

The Sun to the Sextile of Venus in Mundo, by Direct Directim.

Here Venus will be as far from the cusp of the eighth, in proportion to her Semi-diurnal Arc, etc., as the sun is distant from the cusp of the tenth house in proportion to his Semi-diurnal Arc, etc.

The primary distance of Venus from the cusp of the eighth house, is found as follows:

To the Right Ascension of Venus	97° 29'
Add two thirds of her Semi-diurnal Arc	72 40
The Sum is	170 9
From which sub. the Rt. Ascension of the tenth	112 59
And the Distance of Venus from the eighth is	57 10

In the present instance this is the most concise way of finding the distance of Venus from the eighth, though by no means the most natural: the most orderly method would have been to have taken Venus's distance from the West Angle by oblique Descension, thus,

The oblique Descension of Venus under Latitude 41° 40'	116° 31'
From which sub. the Ob. Descension of the seventh	22 59
The Distance of Venus from the seventh, is	93 32
From which sub. $\frac{1}{3}$ of Venus's semi-diurnal Arc, or the space of one house of Venus	36 20
And the Distance of Venus from eighth, is	57 12

This exceeds the former distance by two minutes of a degree, a small error, which cannot be avoided when the semi-arc is divided into six parts, the horary times, nor even when divided into three parts, as some semi-arcs will not admit of being divided by six, or by three without the loss of a small fractional part, unless we descended to the seconds and thirds of a minute, which would be a nicety by no means necessary in these calculations.

Note, the last found distance is the most correct, or the space of one house of Venus 36° 20′ might have been added to 22° 59′ the oblique descension of the West, the sum would have been 59° 19′ the Oblique Descension of Venus's eighth house, and this 59° 19′ taken from the Oblique Descension of Venus 116° 31′, would give 57° 12′ the Distance of Venus from the eighth house as before found.

The Proportion is thus stated.

As ⅓ the Semi-diurnal Arc of the Sun	34°	16′	.7204
To his Distance from the Tenth	32	5	.7490
So is ⅓ the Semi-diurnal Arc of Venus	36	20	.6950
			1.4440
		Subtract	.7204
To Venus's Secon. Dist. from the eighth	34	1	.7236

For the Arc of Direction.

From the Primary Distance of Venus	57°	12
Subtract her Secondary Distance	34	1
Arc of Direction of the Sun to the Sextile of Venus in Mundo, Direct Direction	23	11

The Sun to the Parallel of Venus in Mundo by Converse Direction.

The Proportion is thus stated, etc.

As ⅓ Semi-diurnal Arc of Venus	36° 20'	.6950
Is to Venus's Distance from the Tenth	15 30	1.0649
So is ⅓ Semi-diurnal Arc of the Sun	34 16	.7204
		1.7853
	Subtract	.6950
To the Sun's Secon. Dist. from the Tenth	14 37	1.0903
From the Sun's Primary Distance		32° 5'
Subtract his Secondary Distance		14 37
The Arc of Direction will be		17 28

The Sun to the Body of Venus in Mundo, by Converse Motion.

The Direction is thus calculated.

As ⅓ Semi-diurnal Arc of Venus	36° 20'	.6950
Is to her Distance from the Mid Heaven	15 30	1.0649
So is ⅓ Semi-diurnal Arc of the Sun	34 16	.7204
	Subtract	.6950
To the Sun's Secondary Distance	14 37	1.0900
Add the Primary Distance	32 5	
The Arc of Direction is	46 42	

It will be observed in this Direction, that the Direction is finished in a different quadrant of the Figure to that in which the Sun is posited at first, therefore the Primary and Secondary Distances are added to produce the Arc of Direction.

Of Compound Parallels in Mundo, commonly called Rapt Parallels.

When two planets are both carried forward at the same time by their Converse Motion, so that each planet according to its respective Semi-arc, etc., is placed at the same Proportional Distance as another planet is placed according to the other planet's Semi-arc, etc., this is called a Rapt Parallel.

When this kind of Parallel is formed upon either the tenth or fourth house, the Right Ascension of one is subtracted from the Right Ascension of the other planet, the difference is called the Right Distance, which reserve. When the said Parallel is to the Horoscope, then the distance between the two planets is taken in Oblique Ascensions for the latitude of birth. If the Parallel be made to the west angle, the planet's Distances are taken in the Oblique Descensions of the same latitude. The sum of both planets Semi-arcs, or a third thereof, is used together with the Right or Oblique Distance between the two planets, as in the following example.

The Sun to the Right Parallel of Saturn.

From the Right Ascension of the Sun	145° 4'
Subtract the Right Ascension of Saturn	117 46
There remains the Right Distance	27 18
The Double Horary Times of the Sun	34 15
The Double Horary Times of Saturn	36 41
Sum of both Planets' Double Horary Times	70 56

From the Right Ascension of Saturn			117 46
Subtract the Right Ascension of the Mid Heaven			112 59
Saturn's Primary Distance			4 47

The Proportion is thus stated.

As the sum of both Double Horary Times	70° 56'	.4044
Is to the Double Horary Times of Saturn	36 41	.6908
So is the Difference in Right Ascension	27 18	.8191
		1.5099
	Subtract	.4044
To Saturn's Secondary Distance	14 7	1.1055
To which add his Primary Distance	4 47	
And Arc of Direction is	18 54	

And by proceeding in a similar manner, you may culculate any other compound Parallels of the planets. I hope that the rules and examples here given, will be found sufficient for enabling any ingenious person to make similar calculations. It is not my intention in this Second Part of this Work, to give any instructiou concerning Crepusculine Directions, as I do not consider that doctrine sufficiently established by observation and experience, as we see that Placidus himself has only given four examples of it among the thirty remarkable Nativities which he has published.

CHAPTER V.

The Celestial Planispheres.

HAVING amply elucidated the usual modes of calculating Directions in a more explicit manner than was ever before published, we now hasten to the principal object of our performance the use of the Planispheres in the calculation of Nativities.

How to Construct the Mundane Part of the Celestial Planispheres.

Having provided yourself with a good flat and very straight edged ruler, thirty inches long and about two inches broad, of deal, or any harder well seasoned wood, that it may not be liable to warp, but that it may keep as straight as possible, it should be very thin on the straight edge in order to draw a straight line with the greater degree of exactness. The paper on which you intend to construct your Planisphere should always be a few inches longer than the Planisphere of the zodiac, for if it be two or three inches longer at each end, so much the better, as a little experience herein will soon convince you; the paper should be about eight inches broad, and the stronger the paper is, the better, as it

will be less liable to warp than thin paper, and it would be found of advantage to have the paper stretched and fastened down upon a smooth level board ; strong cream coloured cartridge paper answers the purpose very well, but those who perfer strong drawing paper will use it. Your paper being prepared, take the strait edged ruler, and draw a line perfectly straight upon the middle of the paper lengthwise from one end to the other, this line is to represent the equator of the intended Planisphere, then draw another line perpendicular to your first line, and which must be equally distant from each end of the paper, this second line will represent the Mid Heaven, Meridian, or tenth house. then at the distance of 180 equatorial degrees from the Meridian, to the right hand draw a line, and to the left hand at the same distance draw another line ; both these lines must be perpendicular to the line of the equator, these two lines which in effect are one, represent the lower Meridian, Northern Meridian, cusp of the fourth house, or Imum Celie, which four names mean one and the same thing. Next take in your compasses the greatest obliquity of the ecliptic 23° 28′, from the line of Declinations, with one foot of the compass set on the equatre as a centre, set off the Declination 23° 28′ upon the three perpendiculars of the tenth and fourth houses, both above and below the equator, marking the places by very fine dots ; then to the length of the paper draw through these dots a straight line parallel to the equator on the upper side thereof, this will represent the parallel of the Tropic of Cancer ; draw also in the same manner a line parallel

to the equator on the lower side of it, this last line will represent the parallel of the Tropic of ♑ ; for brevity sake, we will hereafter call them the parallels of ♋ and ♑.

Of the subdivision of these lines.

In the next place divide the equator into 12 equal parts of 30° each, this may be done most expeditiously by placing the straight edge of the ecliptic slider, close to the equator of your intended Planisphere, and with a needle or pointrel, mark the 12 points, each at 30° distance from each other ; this done, consider what the latitude is, for which you wish to construct the Planisphere ; in the present example, the Nativity of Napoleon, the latitude of Ajaccio the place of birth is $41\frac{2}{3}°$ North. Look to the line of houses on the slider where is given the measure of one house from 1° to 60° of latitude ; place one foot of your compasses on 0°, and extend the other foot unto $41\frac{2}{3}°$, and this will be the space of one house for latitude $41\frac{2}{3}°$, then with this space in your compasses, set one foot of the compasses exactly on the Meridian upon the parallel of ♋ : and mark upon the parallel of ♋ (by turning over three times the foot of the compasses) the spaces of three houses, do this, both on the left hand and on the right hand of the Meridian, and these points will be the points of intersection of the Poles of the six diurnal houses. In like manner, set off the spaces of three houses from the lower Meridian upon the parallel of ♑, both towards the left hand and also towards the right hand, and you will then have the

spaces of the six nocturnal houses, and the points of intersection of their respective Poles. Next look in the table of the Poles of the houses according to Ptolemy, and by taking the proportions between those for latitude 41°, and for latitude 42°, you will find the Pole of the eleventh and ninth, the fifth and third houses is equal to 16° 47′; and in like manner 31° 3′ for the Pole of the twelfth and second, the sixth and eighth houses of the figure; but for instrumental calculation it will be always sufficiently near, and quite exact enough for the purpose, to take the nearest whole degree of Polar Elevation; therefore, the Poles of 17° and of 31°, are those we shall use. Now, from among my Planispheres for the different latitudes, take out the three following, viz. for latitudes 17°, 31° and 42° with these; the curve lines for the Cusps or Poles of the houses must be projected in the following manner; for example, to project the Curves or Poles of the eleventh, twelfth, and first houses, proceed thus,

1st.—Take the scale marked Planisphere for 17° of latitude, apply the equator of this scale to the equator of the intended Planisphere, at the distance of 30° from the Meridian, (on the left hand side of the Meridian,) let the equator of the scale on the curved side, coincide exactly with the dot at 30° from the Meridian as a centre, move the scale until the edge of the upper part coincides also with the dot on the Parallel of ♋ at the space of one house from the Meridian, then to the curvature of the scale thus fixed, draw a line, and you will

have the Pole of the eleventh house, as in the copper-plate, No. 6, which see.

2ndly.—Then with the scale marked Planisphere for latitude 31°, and with the equator of this scale placed on the equator of the intended Planisphere at 60° distance from the Meridian, on the left hand side, place this scale so that it may also coincide with that dot on the Parallel of ♋, which is the space of two houses distant from the Meridian, drawing a line to the curvature of this scale, you will thereby have described the Pole of the twelfth house.

3rdly.—Next, take the scale for the Ascendant, or first house, in the present case use the scale for latitude 42°, set the equator of this scale, to the equator of the intended Planisphere at the dot 90° distant from the Meridian, making the other part of the scale to coincide with the dot marked on the Parallel of ♋, at the space of three houses from the Meridian, draw a line hereby, and this line will represent the Eastern Horizon to the Pole of the Ascendant or latitude of birth. To draw the Pole of the other houses is a similar process to this just described, and by well observing and examining the Planisphere, Plate, No. 6, and by applying the proper scales to each of the other houses of the figure respectively, will render this perfectly clear, and will better explain it, than ten thousand more words could do ; this is all that strictly speaking belongs to a Planisphere for erecting the twelve houses of the Celestial Figure, and

by proceeding in a similar manner, you may construct the Planisphere for any other latitude required.

Having now described the process for constructing the Planisphere for the twelve houses, we shall next show how to introduce some additional circles therein. The most useful of these is,

The Circle of Semi-quartiles and Sesqui-quadrate.

This circle, see Plate, No. 6, is found in each of the four quadrants of the Celestial Figure, and is at a medium distance from the Ascendant and tenth house, from the tenth and seventh, from the first and fourth, and from the fourth and seventh house, and is of great service in calculating all the Semi-quartiles and Sesqui-quadrates, which are cast to the Ascendant, and to the Mid Heaven, its proper Polar Elevation, and its distance from the angles are found thus.

The Poles used for the twelfth and second houses were	31°
for the eleventh and third houses were	17
The difference of Polar Elevations is	14
Half is	7

Now this half of the difference of the Poles, viz. 7°, added to 17°, the Pole of the eleventh and third, ninth and fifth houses, gives 24°, for the Pole with which you are to describe the circle of the Planisphere, whereon the Aspects of the Semi-quartiles and Sesqui-

quadrates to the first and tenth houses are formed, and to do this, divide the space on the Parallel of Cancer, between the Meridian and the intersection of the same Parallel, by the line, or cusp of the first and seventh house, each into two equal parts: mark a dot on the middle point, and also at 45° from the cusp of the tenth, upon the line of the equator mark another point or dot. Next take the Planisphere or Pole for 24° of latitude, and place its equator exactly on the dot at 45° on the equator of the intended Planisphere, and let its upper part be close to the dot upon the Parallel of Cancer, then with your steel drawing pen or with a fine pointed hard black lead pencil, draw the circle marked S□ and SS□, in Plate, No. 6, do the same in regard to the Parallel of ♑ as you see done in the Copper plate. The circle of the Quintile Aspects is found, by taking $\frac{1}{5}$ part the space of two houses upon the Parallel of Cancer and Capricorn, and set off this distance from the cusps of the tenth and fourth houses upon the Parallels of Cancer and Capricorn, the circles of position upon the equator for the Pole of the Quintile, is always 12° of Right Ascension from the tenth and fourth: the Polar Elevation of the circle of the Quintiles may be taken as being equal to two parts in five, the Polar Elevation of the eleventh and third houses, always taking the nearest whole degree, which will be sufficiently exact.

In the Nativity of Napoleon, the circle of the Quintiles is 15° distant from the tenth and fourth houses, upon the Parallels of Cancer and Capricorn respective-

ly, and its Pole of Elevation very nearly 7°, therefore I have used the curve or Pole of Elevation answering to 7° of latitude, in describing this circle on Plate, No. 6.

Note. A supernumerary, but very important table, is given in the third part of this book, whereby may be found by inspection, all the proportions and the Poles, for describing on the Planispheres, the circles of the Semi-quartile, Sesquiquadrate, of the Quintile and Bi-quintile Aspects in Mundo, from the equator to 60° of latitude.

N. B. In drawing any lines upon the Planisphers, do not make use of a common pen, which would be an infallible means of blotting and spoiling your projections.

CHAPTER VI.

To Erect a Figure of the Heavens by and upon the Planisphere, and how to place the Planets therein.

HAVING by the Ephemeris * or Almanac found the Sun's longitude for the day and hour required in the usual manner, the Right Ascension of the Sun may be found thus, by the Planisphere of the Zodiac; knowing the Sun's longitude, the Right Ascension is marked on the equator in the line perpendicular thereto.

Thus in the Nativity before us of the Emperor Napoleon, the time is August 14th, 1769, at 21h 51′ 40″; and the Sun's longitude then, ♌ 22° 43′ and the Right Ascension of the Sun is 145° 4′; therefore,

To the Right Ascension of the Sun	145°	4′
Add the Right Ascension of Time from Noon	327	55
The Sum is	472	59
Rejecting the whole Circle or	360	
The Rt. Ascension of the Mid Heaven will be	112	59

which we will call 113° on the Planisphere, as it not

* N. B. White's Ephemeris is the very best that is published, for these purposes.

reasonable to suppose that a minute of a degree can be shown upon this instrument, we must content ourselves with larger fractions of a degree, such as the sixth, the eighth, or the tenth part of a degree, either of the last mentioned fractions being a much greater nicety, than could well be expected; but which can nevertheless easily enough be seen by a good eye, and be readily marked off by a fine pointed marker. Now place the Planisphere of the Zodiac, or Ecliptic Slider, so that the equator of the Slider may coincide exactly with the equator of the Mundane part of the Planisphere; in this manner slide the Ecliptic backwards or forwards until 113°on the lower edge of the slide, correspond exactly with the Meridian or cusp of the tenth house, while thus fixed draw the zodiacal curve, or Ecliptic, upon the intended Planisphere, and then observe what degrees of the Zodiac are intersected by the different poles or cusps of the houses, you will find ♉ 21¼° upon the cusp of the tenth house, and about 24¾° of ♌ intersected by the Pole of the eleventh house, which is therefore the cusp of the eleventh house; and by observing in the same manner what degrees of the Ecliptic are intersected by the other Poles of the houses; we shall find ♍ 23° 9-10ths on the cusp of the twelfth house, and on the Ascendant or first house, we find the Ascending ♎ 18°, and on the cusp of the second house we find ♍ 15°, and on the cusp of the third house is ♐ 16¾° very nearly, the opposite houses have the same degrees of the opposite signs.

Observe, that while the Ecliptic Slider is thus fixed

in its proper position, that besides drawing with a fine pointed black lead pencil or steel drawing pen the figure and curve of the Ecliptic, you should make a fine dot and write the proper mark or Astronomical Character at the beginning of each sign of the Zodiac, also mark every 5th° and 10th° of each sign with a very fine dot, and number each 10th° thus 10. 20. but when very great despatch is desired it will be sufficient to mark the beginning of each sign respectively ; and in the latter case write upon the cusp of each of the houses the degrees and fraction of degrees intersected by them, and the celestial figure will be completed ready for the insertion of the planets.

Advantages and Certainty in the Use of the Planispheres.

Although by the use of Mathematical tables the results may he had to degrees and minutes, or even to seconds, yet the attention and labor, and length of time required, are so considerable (that except as in the case of Lunar observations to determine the longitude of ships at sea, or of different places on land) that no degree of nicety in the results can compensate for such a sacrifice of time and trouble,—there are indeed many kinds of calculations, such for instance as the calculations of Nativities, where great exactness is by no means so desirable as certainty in the result, and great expedition in performing the process, even if the Arc be brought with certainty to within a quarter of a degree,

it is, in many cases, quite sufficient. I for my own part should have been satisfied with it, if performed instrumentally as by the Planispheres, on account of the little trouble and time consumed therein, but these Planispheres will very rarely if ever be found to deviate so much as a quarter of a degree, from the result obtained by the use of Mathematical tables; and in general we may depend on them as coming within the eighth or even the tenth part of a degree in the result; indeed in many instances these Planispheres in point of correctness are very little inferior even to the tables themselves, as will be seen in bringing up the directions of this Nativity; with this great advantage, that it is nearly impossible to commit blunders in the use of them. Nothing could more happily demonstrate the certainty in using them, than the erection of this figure of the Nativity of Napoleon. After having finished that laborious undertaking, the construction of all the Metallic Patterns for the Polar Elevations of the different houses, etc., I was anxious to bring them into use and to test their excellence and utility as soon as possible, accordingly, very late one night by their assistance, a Planisphere for Napoleon's Nativity was projected to the same time as given in Mr. Worsdale's publication, the cusps of the tenth, eleventh, first, second and third houses were indeed very nearly the same as in Mr. Worsdale's figure of this Nativity; but when I came to examine the cusps of the twelfth and six houses in my projection, there was a wonderful difference, for I found very nearly 24° of Virgo on the former, and very nearly 24°

of Pisces on the latter house, I concluded immediately that I must have made some great mistake, because in the figure given by Mr. Worsdale, there is exactly 20° of Virgo upon the cusp of the twelfth, and exactly 20° of Pisces on the cusp of the sixth house; I said to myself, "I must have committed some great oversight, for surely Mr. Worsdale can never have made so gross a blunder as to put the cusps of the twelfth and sixth houses of the figure four whole degrees wrong!!" The next morning I projected another Planisphere for the same Nativity, the result was exactly the same as by the first, and as I had never before found my Planispheres to deceive me, I now concluded that I was right, and that Mr. Worsdale, the pretended Ptolemy of our age, was wrong; but to assure myself of this, beyond all doubt or dispute, I gave myself the trouble of calculating immediately, the cusp of the twelfth house by spherical trigonometry, and found thereby that the true cusp of the twelfth house, was ♍ 23° 56' 20", and not 20° of Virgo as Mr. Worsdale had given it, so that the Planispheres give the result true within four minutes of a degree, or even less than this, while Mr. Worsdale was wrong very nearly 4°!!

How to Place the Planets in the Planisphere.

At this stage of the business, we suppose that the longitudes and latitudes of all the Planets have been either calculated from Astronomical tables, or by means of an Ephemeris, and by making due proportion of the

Planets' daily motions, you have reduced their places to the time of birth, and are therefore ready for introducing them into their proper places, as soon as the Planisphere is ready for them.

At the birth of Napoleon, the Planets places, as given by Mr. Worsdale, are as below.

Planets, etc.	Longitudes.		Latitudes.		
♄	♋	25° 46′	0° 3′	North
♃	♍	15 9	0 53	North
♂	♍	12 2	0 58	North
☉	♌	22 43		
♀	♋	7 1	3 10	South
☿	♌	6 30	0 30	North
☽	♑	28 47	2 59	North
☊	♐	20 47		

The Planisphere of the Zodiac remaining fixed in its proper position, as before mentioned, the Ecliptic longitudes are to be marked as exactly as we can by making a fine dot for each, in the manner directed in the second problem of the third chapter, of the first part of this treatise, the Planets being thus introduced, it now remains to shew the method of finding the Circle of Position of any Planet, and from that to determine the Polar Elevation of the Planet. The Planets being placed in the Planisphere according to the directions given in the problem just mentioned, when measured by the equatorial scale of the degrees, on the straight edge of the Planisphere of the Zodiac, their Right Ascensions in

degrees and tenths of degrees will be found to be very nearly as below.

♄ 117° 8-10ths.	♂ 163° 8-10ths.	♀ 97° 5-10ths.
♃ 222 9-10ths.	☉ 145 1-10th.	☿ 128 9-10ths.
		☽ 300 3-10ths.

By way of example, we will find the circle of position and the Pole of the Sun, in which processes, the little table subjoined which shows the value of every 6′ in the decimal fraction of a degree, will be found useful in these calculations.

Minutes.	Decimal of a Degree.
6	.1
12	.2
18	.3
24	.4
30	.5
36	.6
42	.7
48	.8
54	.9

We must however not forget, that while we are placing the centre of each Planet according to its Declination, that we must set off the said Declination, both upon the perpendicular lines of the tenth and fourth houses, then by help of the straight edged ruler placed close to these points, draw a line so as to pass through the centre of the Planet and 360° in length, this line will be the Parallel of Declination of the Planet, formerly called the Antiscion, the Declination set off upon the

contrary side of the equator, will be the Contra-antiscion. It is almost unnecessary to add that the Semi-diurnal Arc of a Planet is instantly found by measuring upon the Planet's Parallel of Declination the space from the Meridian to the Horizon, and its Semi-nocturnal Arc, by measuring from the cusp of the fourth unto where the Horizon is intersected by the Planet's Parallel of Declination; also, one third of its Semi-diurnal Arc is shown by the spaee between the Mid Heaven and the Pole of the eleventh, or ninth house upon the said Parallel of Declination, and one third of the Semi-nocturnal Arc is in like manner found by the distance between the cusp of the fourth and the Pole of the third or fifth house upon the Planets Parallel of Declination.

RULE.

For placing the Planets upon the Celestial Planispheres in the most expeditious manner possible.

To do this take out the Declination of each Planet from the Ephemeris, correct to the time of birth, by duly proportioning the Planets increase or decrease of Declination when necessary (this may generally be done by mental proportion, or by the most simple process in Arithmetic) in this way write down the Declination of all the Planets, and also their longitude to the time of birth; this being done, draw the Parallels and Contra-parallels of all the Planets' Declination as aforesaid. Having made a dot or mark at the proper longitude of each planet, upon the line of the ecliptic, apply the qua-

drant of latitude as before taught, and thereby draw a line through each longitude marked, and where this line intersects the Parallel of each Planet will be the centre of the Planet as required.

Note. When this method is used, it will not be necessary to take out the Planet's latitude from the Ephemeris.

GENERAL RULE.

For finding the Polar Elevation of a Planet.

When a Planet is within two or three degrees distance from the Pole of any house of the figure, you may use the Polar Elevation of that house to which the Planet is nearest; but when a Planet is far from the cusp of any house, take the difference of Polar Elevation of the two houses, and say by the Rule of Proportion.

If one third of the Planet's Semi-arc, give the difference of Polar Elevation between the two houses, what will the Planet's distance from the least Polar Elevation give, and the fourth number or answer added to the least Polar Elevation, will give the Pole of the Planet.

This Rule is similar in principle to that given by Placidus; but is I believe, more intelligible than the canon of Placidus. But the following particular Rule appears best adapted to the Planispheres; first find the Planet's Circle of Position, and from that, the Planet's Polar Elevation, as in the following Example.

To Find the Circle of Position of the Sun.

As the Semi-diurnal Arc of the Sun 102. 8

Is to 90° of the Equator 90. 0
So is the Sun's Dist. from the Tenth 32. 1

90. 0
1800
2700

102. 8) 28890. 0 (28°.1' or 28°
2056 [1-10th.

8330
8224

1060
1028

32 Remainder.

To the Sun's Circle of Position from the Tenth 28. 1
Which Subtracted from the Sun's Primary 32. 1
Leaves the Sun's Ascensional Difference under his own Polar Elevation 4. 0

This Example was thus worked decimally by arithmetic, to shew the utility of the foregoing little table, the answer is true to a minute of a degree, although had it differed three minutes of a degree, which would be the greatest difference that can ever happen, it would still have been sufficiently exact for our purpose; the same result might be had by the Sliding Gunter, thus, opposite to 102.8 on A, set 90 on B, then opposite to 32.1 on A, you will find 28.1, the Sun's Circle of Position on B, as before, the same may be done upon a good Carpenter's Sliding Rule.

To find the Sun's Pole, by the Planispheres in Plates, No. 1, *and* 2.

With the Sun's Declination 14° very nearly, on the Scale of Declinations, place the edge of the Scale close to 4°, the Ascensional Difference of the Sun counted upon the Equator of Plate No. 1, or 2, observing that the Equator on the Scale coincides with the other Equator, take notice what curve of Polar Elevation is cut by the Sun's Declination, in this example the Sun's Declination will nearly touch the curve marked 16, therefore the Sun's Pole of Elevation is 16° nearly. The Sun's Pole will then be described upon the Planisphere of the Nativity in the following manner.

To Describe the Sun's Pole upon the Planisphere.

With a sharp pointed pencil, or a fine pointrel, make a mark or dot on the Equator, at the Circle of Position's distance from the Meridian, in this case the Sun's Circle of Position is 28° 1-10th distant, then from the Planispheres for different latitudes, take out the scale for the latitude of 16°, the Pole of the Sun, place the Equator of this scale so as to touch the Equator of the other Planisphere, close to the mark made for the Circle of Position, and bring the other part of the scale with its edge close to the dot made for the Sun's Centre, while thus fixed draw a line to the curve and it will be the Pole of the Sun upon the Planisphere as was required.

The intelligent reader will here observe the utility of the Planet's Circle of Position's distance from the Meridian, in limiting and determining the proper Inclination of the Pole of the Planet.

We will just observe that the Sun's Pole might have been also found by the general rule, thus upon the Sliding Gunter. Set 34° 3' the third part of the Sun's Semi-arc, on A, opposite to 17, the Polar Elevation belonging thereunto, on B, then opposite to 32° 1' the Circle of Position's distance on A, you will find very nearly 16 on B, the Sun's Polar Elevation as before.

Proceed in a similar manner in finding the Circles of Position, and the Poles of any other Planet. We have here given some variety in the mode of calculation; the student can use that which he likes best, a little practice will render them all equally easy and expeditious.

Semi-diurnal Arcs, etc., of the Planets.

		⅓			⅓			⅓
♄	110· 7	36· 7	♂	97· 1	32· 4	♀	109·	36· 3
♃	75· 7	25· 2	☉	102· 8	34· 8	☿	107· 8	35· 9

Also the ☽'s Semi-nocturnal Arc is 106· 2, and ⅓ of it 35· 4, very nearly, when measured upon the Planisphere.

TABLE

Of the Planets' Distances from the Tenth and Fourth Houses, their Circles of Position, and their Polar Elevations, in the Nativity of Napoleon.

	Dist. from Angle.	Circle of Position.	Pole of Elevation.	Scale of Pole used.
Saturn	4· 8 fm. 10th.	3· 9	2½	2
Jupiter	70· 0 fm. 4th.	60· 4	31·	31
Mars	50· 9 fm. 10th.	47· 1	25·	25
Sun	32· 1 fm. 10th.	28· 1	16·	16
Venus	15· 5 fm. 10th.	12· 8	7· 4	7
Mercury	15· 9 fm. 10th.	13· 3	7· 5	8
Moon	7· 3 fm. 4th.	6· 2	3· 5	4
P. Fortune	78· 0 fm. 4th.	66· 1	33· 0	33

The numbers in the foregoing tables are expressed in degrees and tenths. The Circles of Position and also the Polar Elevations of all the Planets were calculated in the same manner as those were for the Sun, and for sake of brevity we have omitted the calculations of them here; the Planet Jupiter being so very near the cusp of the second house, the Pole of the second, viz. the scale for latitude 31°, was used to draw the line representing the Pole of Jupiter. By applying the scales for the different latitudes mentioned in the last column of the foregoing table, to the Poles in Plate, No. 6, will give the student a better idea of this business, than any words could do; but those persons who would wish to have a perfect readiness and a clear understanding of the Planispheres, will do well to project a complete Planisphere in imitation of Plate, No. 6, the Planets being introduced to the Planisphere with their latitudes, and thereby their declinations. Their Parallels of de-

clination being drawn, and the Poles of the Planets being completed according to the Rules before given, the Planisphere is now quite ready to calculate the various directions, both Zodiacal and Mundane, in the manner exhibited in the next Chapter.

CHAPTER VII.

Calculation of Directions by the Celestial Planispheres.

I. By way of Example, let us direct the Sun to the Sextile of Venus in the Zodiac.

It will be remembered that this Aspect (see Part II. and Chapter iii. falls in ♏ 7° 1', by placing the Planisphere of the Zodiac in its proper position mark the place of the Aspect upon the Planisphere of the Nativity, which may be done in a moment.

For the Arc of Direction.

Draw a line from ♏ 7° Parallel to the Equator, until it meets the Pole of the Sun, this line measured by the Equatorial Scale is equal to 15° 1-6th, the Arc of Direction required.

EXAMPLE II.

The Sun to the Sextile of Jupiter in the Zodiac.

From ♏ 15° 9', or ♏ 15° 1-6th, draw a line until it touches the Pole of the Sun (Parallel to the Equator) this line is equal to 23° 6-10ths, the Arc of Direction required.

EXAMPLE III.

The Sun to the Body of Saturn, in the Zodiac, Converse Direction.

Upon the Sun's Parallel of Declination from the centre of the Sun, measure the distance where the Sun's Parallel intersects the Pole of Saturn, and you will find it a little more than 27° 1-10ths, the Arc of Direction required.

EXAMPLE IV.

The Sun to the Sextile of Saturn in the Zodiac, Direct Direction.

From 25°½ ♏, draw a line Parallel to the Equator, until this line intersects the Pole of the Sun, this line measured will be found equal to 34° 6-10ths, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE V.

The Sun to his own Semi-quartile in the Zodiac.

Parallel to the Equator from Libra 7°¾, draw a line to intersect the Pole of the Sun, the length of this line will be 40° 5-6ths, the Arc of Direction required.

EXAMPLE VI.

The Sun to the Zodiacal Parallel of Mars.

Observe, where the Parallel of Mars intersects the Ecliptic, measure thence unto where the same Parallel intersects the Pole of the Sun, the distance is 17° 5-6ths, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE VII.

The Sun to the Body of Mars in the Zodiac.

From that point where the Pole of Mars intersects the Ecliptic, draw a line Parallel to the Equator until it touches the Pole of the Sun, this line will be equal to 20° 4-10ths, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE VIII.

The Sun to the Body of Mars in Mundo, by Direct Motion.

From the centre of Mars on his Parallel of Declination, measure to the point intersected by the Pole of the Sun, this line is equal to 20° 7-10ths, the Arc of Direction.

Note. This Direction is also the Direction of the Sun, to the Mundane Parallel of Mars, Direct Direction.

EXAMPLE IX.

The Ascendant to the Semi-quartile of Mars.

On the Parallel of Mars, measure from his centre to the line marked S□, and you will find the distance 2°$\frac{1}{3}$, the Arc of Direction required.

EXAMPLE X.

The Ascendant to the Sextile of Mars.

On the Parallel of Mars from his centre to the Pole of the eleventh house, is 18°$\frac{1}{2}$, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE XI.

The Ascendant to the Trine of Venus.

From the centre of Venus (on her Parallel) measured to the Pole of the ninth house is 20° 5-6th, the Arc of Direction required.

EXAMPLE XII.

The Ascendant to the Sesqui-quadrate of Venus.

On the Parallel of Venus from her centre to the circle marked SS□ is 39_0, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE XIII.

The Ascendant to the Trine of Saturn.

On rhe Parallel of Saturn from his centre unto the Pole of the ninth is 41°½, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE XIV.

The Sun to the Semi-quartile of Saturn in Mundo, Direct Direction.

Take in your compasses the distance from the Mid Heaven to where the Pole of the Sun intersects the Parallel of Saturn, apply this distance upon the same Parallel from the circle marked S□ towards Saturn, where make a mark, measure from this mark to the centre of Saturn, the distance will be 25°½, the Arc of Direction required.

EXAMPLE XV.

Mid Heaven to the Body of Saturn.

From the centre of Saturn to the Mid Heaven is 4° 8-10ths, the Arc of Direction required.

EXAMPLE XVI.

The Ascendant to the Quartile of Saturn.

This Example is precisely the same as the XV. Example.

EXAMPLE XVII.

Mid Heaven to the Body of the Sun.

From the centre of the Sun to the Mid Heaven is 32° 1-10th, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE XVIII.

The Ascendant to the Quartile of the Sun.

This Example is precisely the same as Example XVII.

EXAMPLE XIX.

The Sun to the Parallel of Saturn in Mundo, Converse Direction.

Upon the Sun's Parallel with one foot of your compasses on the Mid Heaven as a centre, extend the other point of the compasses to where the Pole of Saturn intersects the Sun's Parallel, with this extent make a mark on the West side of the Mid Heaven upon the Sun's Parallel, then from the Sun's centre to this mark, will be about 36° 6-10ths, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE XX.

The Sun to the Parallel of Venus in Mundo, Direct Direction.

On the Parallel of Venus from where it is intersected by the Pole of the Sun, extend your compasses to the Mid Heaven as a centre, with this extent make a mark upon the said Parallel, then from the centre of Venus to this mark will be 18°½, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE XXI.

The Sun to the Sextile of Venus in Mundo, Direct Direction.

With the extent in your compasses found in Example xx. place one foot of the compasses on the Pole of the Eighth, on the Parallel of Venus, and with the other point of the compasses mark this extent on the said Parallel, then from the centre of Venus to this mark, will be 23° 3-10ths. the Arc of Direction.

N. B. For the Directions to the Quintile Aspects, extend your compasses from the M. Celie, or from the Fourth House, to the Circle or Pole marked Quintiles, and this extent set off from the place where the Sextile Aspect was formed, gives the place where the Quintile Aspect falls, and in this manner the Arc of Direction of the Sun to the Quintile of Venus will be found equal to 37° 7-10ths. very nearly. Double the extent above mentioned, added to the place of the Trine, will give the place of the Biquintile Aspect.

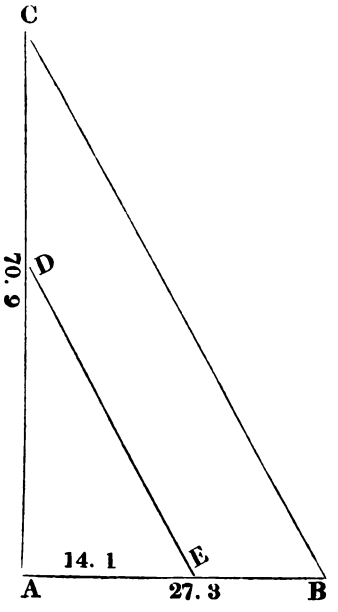
The Sun to the Rapt Parallel of Saturn.

We will shew the methods of working this calculation several different ways. 1st. On the Gunter.

Opposite 70. 9, the sum of both Planets' Double Horary Times on A, set 27. 3, the right distance on B, then opposite 36. 7, the Double Horary Times of Saturn on A, will be 14.1, Saturn's secondary distance on B, lay off this 14.1, from the centre of Saturn on Saturn's Parallel to the Eastward, and make a mark, the distance from this mark to the Mid Heaven, will be 18° 9-10ths. the Arc of Direction required.

2. By the Construction of a Plane Triangle.

Draw A, C, a line at pleasure, from A, to C, mark of 70° 9-10ths. Equatorial Degrees, the sum of Double Horary Times, and from A, to B, draw a line 27. 3, the Rt. Distance, in an angle taken at random, to the line A, C, then draw the line C, B, next from A, to D, set off 36° 7-10ths. Saturn's Double Horary Times, then with your Parallel ruler, draw D, E, Parallel to the line, C, B, this will give, A, E, equal to 14° 1-10ths. the secondary distance of Saturn from the Mid Heaven as before.



Being desirous of drawing to the conclusion of my work, I shall therefore omit some other methods of working Rapt Parallels, this treatise being already extended beyond the limits first intended.

EXAMPLE XXIII.

The Ascendant to the Body of Jupiter.

From the centre of Jupiter to the Horizon is 34° 1-5th. nearly, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE XXIV.

The Moon to the Opposition of Mars in Mundo, Direct Direction.

On the Contra-parallel of Mars where intersected by the Pole of the Moon, place one foot of the compasses, extend the other foot to the Imum Celie, take this extent and apply it from the Mid Heaven towards Mars, upon the Parallel of Mars, where make a mark, then from this to the centre of Mars, is 44° 1-5th, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE XXV.

The Moon to the Opposition of Mercury in Mundo, Direct Direction.

On the Contra-parallel of Mercury where intersected by the Pole of the Moon, take its distance from the Imum Celie, mark this distance from the Mid Heaven towards Mercury, upon the Parallel of Mercury, then from this mark to the centre of Mercury will be 8°½, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE XXVI.

The Ascendant to the Sextile of the Moon.

From the centre of the Moon to the Pole of the Second House upon the Moon's Parallel is 42° 7-10ths, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE XXVII.

The Sun to the Opposition of the Moon in Mundo, Converse Direction.

On the Contra-parallel of the Sun, take the distance of the Moon's Pole from the Fourth House, apply this distance from the Mid Heaven towards the Sun, upon the Sun's Parallel, and there make a mark, from this mark to the centre of the Sun will be 25°, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE XXVIII.

The Sun to the Parallel of the Moon in Mundo, Converse Direction.

Let the distance found in the twenty-seventh Example be applied the contrary way, that is, from the Mid Heaven towards the West upon the Sun's Parallel, where make a mark, then from this mark to the centre of the Sun's will be 39° 1-6th, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE XXIX.

The Sun to the Parallel of Mercury in Mundo, Converse Direction.

From the Mid Heaven upon the Parallel of the Sun, extend the compasses to the Pole of Mercury, mark off this extent upon the Sun's Parallel from the Mid Heaven, towards the West, then from this mark to the centre of the Sun is 47°¼, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE XXX.

The Sun to the Body of Venus in Mundo, Converse Direction.

Upon the Sun's Parallel from the Pole of Venus to the centre of the Sun is 46° 7-10ths, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE XXXI.

The Part of Fortune to the Quartile of Saturn, in Mundo.

On the Contra-parallel of Saturn, take the distance of the Pole of Part of Fortune from the Western Horizon, mark this distance on the Parallel of Saturn from the Mid Heaven towards the West, then from this mark to the centre of Saturn is 34°, the Arc of Direction.

EXAMPLE XXXII.

Part of Fortune to the Sextile of Venus, in Mundo.

The distance from the Pole of Part of Fortune to the West, mark on the Parallel of Venus from the Pole of the Ninth towards the Eight House, from this mark to the centre of Venus is 49° 8-10ths, the Arc of Direction.

CRITICAL REMARKS.

On the Preceding Arcs of Direction calculated on the Celestial Planispheres.

The Author being desirous of making a fair comparison both for his own satisfaction, and that of the ingenious persons who patronise his work, measured with very great care and exactness, the Arcs of Directions in the thirty-two preceding Examples, by means of very accurate scales, whereby he has found that the 21st Example is within 8′ of a degree of the result given, when the calculations are made by the tables ; the 20th Example is within 5′ ; the 3rd and 23rd, within 4′ ; the 7th and 13th, within 3′ ; the 4th, 27th and 28th,

within 2′ ; and the 5th, 6th, 9th, 12th, 14th, and 29th Examples, each within 1′ of a degree respectively, of the Arcs that are given by the tables, and the other 17 Examples are the same Arcs exactly as found by the tables. Since the Author has finished his complete set of Planispheres for the Scales of Polar Elevations, the results of calculation by the Planispheres, have exceeded his most sanguine expectations, so much so indeed, that he intends never to calculate by any other method.

CHAPTER VIII.

To Project the Scale of Years, etc.

To do this by the Planisphere. First, draw a straight line on or near the bottom of the paper on which the Planisphere of the Nativity is projected, which line you may draw to the length of 50, 60, or 70, or 80 Equatorial degrees.

Next, consider how far the time of Birth is distant from Noon-day, and through how many minutes of zodiacal longitude the Sun moves in that time, call this the daily equation of longitude which reserve and apply in the following manner.

EXAMPLE.

In the Nativity of Napoleon the time in the afternoon from the 14th of August, is 21h. 52', to which add in time 36' for the difference of Meridians, and the time at London is 22h. and 28', in which time the Sun moves 54' of a degree in longitude. Call 54' the equation, this added to the Sun's longitude on the 14th August, gives the Sun's longitude at the time of Birth, ♌ 22° 43'. To the Sun's longitude on the 16th August. at noon, viz. ♌ 23° 45', add 54' gives ♌ 24° 39'

the Sun's place, two complete days after Birth. Again, on the 18th August, at noon, the Sun is in ♌ 25° 40', add 54' gives ♌ 26° 34', for four complete days after Birth. Again, on the 20th August, 1769, the Sun was in ♌ 27° 36', add 54' gives Leo 28° 30', for the Sun's place six complete days after Birth, answering to six years of the Native's life; by proceeding in this manner until sixty days after Birth, we obtain thirty different longitudes of the Sun, which are made available for forming the measure of time, or Scale of Years for 60 years, in the following manner, viz. Having arranged the thirty different longitudes in regular order in a table, then take the Planisphere of the Zodiac, and fix it upon the proper place on the Planisphere of the Nativity, while thus fixed, with a fine pointrel, etc., mark each of the thirty longitudes of the Sun upon the Planisphere of the Nativity as carefully as you can by fine dots, next, by means of a Tee Square, or other proper Instrument, draw a perpendicular from each of the longitudes (or dots) upon the straight line draw near the bottom of the Planisphere, as aforesaid, these thirty spaces will each of them represent the interval of two years, again either by a pair of fine pointed compasses, or by inspection, divide each space into two equal parts, then you will have a measure of time or Scale for sixty years for this Nativity, by which Scale of Years, the time corresponding to the different Arcs of Direction's, to a quarter of a year, or even to a month, may be instantly shown with a sufficient degree of accuracy.

Another Method of forming the Scale of Years.

Supposing that you have not an Ephemeris for the year of Birth, but only have a copy of the Planets' Places for the Noon-day before Birth, and for the Noon-day after Birth, in this case, the following method will be found sufficiently correct, and equally expeditious.

Observe what degree of the Zodiac the Sun is in, at the time of Birth, then look in any Ephemeris for any year whatever, in which you can find the Sun's longitude to be the same within half a degree, as it is in the Nativity you are calculating; look in the same Ephemeris for the Sun's longitude for every second day, at Noon, as far as you desire to extend your Scale of Years, noting down each longitude regularly on a slip of paper, then, by aid of the Planisphere, or Tables of Right Ascensions, opposite to each longitude of the Sun, place its Right Ascension, next take the Equatorial Scale, (marked on the straight edge of the Ecliptic Slider,) and by help of it, mark each Right Ascension respectively corresponding to the Sun's longitude before mentioned, on a straight line drawn on the lower part of the Planisphere of the Nativity; subdivide each space into two equal parts, and you will have a Scale of Years equally as correct, as by the first method.

Or by the Universal Scale of Years.

To save the student the trouble of constructing a Scale of Years for each and every Nativity, he might wish to calculate, I have taken incredible pains to construct a Universal Scale of Years, this is added to the Planisphere of the Zodiac. It is adjusted with great care to the Sun's place for every day throughout the year, for the second year after leap year, (1830) so that it will answer sufficiently near for our purpose for any year whatever. When you wish to add the Scale

of Years upon the Planisphere of any Nativity, you have only to bring the straight edge of the Planisphere of the Nativity, parallel with, and close to the line marked January, February, March, etc., keeping it fixed there, then with a fine pointed black lead pencil, or a pen, make a mark upon the edge of the Planisphere of the Nativity, to correspond with the marks for each day after Birth, for as many days as you would have years in the required Scale of Years, always observing to begin with that day upon the Universal Scale of Years, when the Sun's place was nearest to the Sun's longitude at the time of Birth, or when the Sun is within half a degree of the same longitude as he was at the time of Birth. By this means you may add the Scale of Years for any Nativity in about two minutes time.

TABLE

Of the Sun's place for every Second Day after the Birth of Napoleon, to form the Scale of Years for that Nativity.

Day of Month.		Sun's Longitude.		Longitude Required.	
August	14.	♌ 21. 49 + 54		♌ 22. 43	at Birth.
	15.	22. 47 ,, 54			
	16.	23. 45 ,, 54		24. 29 =	2 Days.
	18.	25. 40 ,, 54		26. 34 ,,	4 ..
	20.	27. 36 ,, 54		28. 30 ,,	6 ..
	22.	29. 32 ,, 54		♍ 0. 26 ,,	8 ..
	24.	♍ 1. 28 ,, 54		2. 22 ,,	10 ..
	26.	3. 24 ,, 54		4. 18 ,,	12 ..
	28.	5. 20 ,, 54		6. 14 ,,	14 ..
	30.	7. 16 ,, 54		8. 10 ,,	16 ..
Septem.	1.	9. 12 ,, 54		10. 6 ,,	18 ..
	3.	11. 8 ,, 54		12. 2 ,,	20 ..
	5.	13. 5 ,, 54		13. 59 ,,	22 ..
	7.	15. 2 ,, 54		15. 56 ,,	24 ..
	9.	16. 58 ,, 54		17. 52 ,,	26 ..
	11.	18. 55 ,, 54		19. 49 ,,	28 ..
	13.	20. 52 ,, 54		21. 46 ,,	30 ..
	15.	22. 50 ,, 54		23. 44 ,,	32 ..
	17.	24. 47 ,, 54		25. 41 ,,	34 ..
	19.	26. 44 ,, 54		27. 38 ,,	36 ..
	21.	28. 42 ,, 54		29. 36 ,,	38 ..
	23.	♎ 0. 40 ,, 54		♎ 1. 34 ,,	40 ..
	25.	2. 37 ,, 54		3. 31 ,,	42 ..
	27.	4. 35 ,, 54		5. 29 ,,	44 ..
	29.	6. 33 ,, 54		7. 27 ,,	46 ..
October	1.	8. 32 ,, 54		9. 26 ,,	48 ..
	3.	10. 30 ,, 54		11. 24 ,,	50 ..
	5.	12. 29 ,, 54		13. 23 ,,	52 ..
	7.	14. 27 ,, 54		15. 21 ,,	54 ..
	9.	16. 26 ,, 54		17. 20 ,,	56 ..
	11.	18. 25 ,, 54		19. 19 ,,	58 ..
	13.	20. 24 ,, 54		21. 18 ,,	60 ..

The Part of Fortune,

Or Lunar Horoscope, is placed in Napoleon's Nativity at the same distance from the Ascendant, as the Moon would be, if the Sun were placed in the very degree and minute in which he now is, viz. Leo 22° 43′, Ascending in the Eastern Horizon and the Moon in Capricorn 28° 47′; this distance in Oblique Ascensions by the Planisphere is 184° 1-10th very nearly under the latitude of 41° 40′, its Circle of Position and Pole of Elevation are calculated in the same manner as for the Planets, as I have some remarks to make upon this point in the third part of this Treatise, it is therefore unnecessary to give any further instruction for finding its Mundane Position, etc., in this part of the work.

REMARKS,

On Mr. Worsdale's Nativity of Napoleon.

As there have been Nativities Published by several different Authors, some persons may be desirous to know why I preferred Mr. Worsdale's calculation of this Nativity; my reasons were, that I understood that Mr. Worsdale's Publication is in the hands of many persons who study Elementary Philosophy; and, therefore, would serve very well as a criterion of the results of calculations peformed by the Planispheres; and, also, that Mr. W. has judged very correctly of the probable extent of the Native's life, although he was mistaken as to the nature or manner of the Native's death which he predicted

would be a VIOLENT ONE, no doubt he, Mr. Worsdale, hoped and wished it would be a violent death; but I would not for the honour of Napoleon's Imperial and Royal Gaolers believe otherwise than that Napoleon died a *Natural Death!!* Yes, he died a natural death, aged 51 years, and about eight months, which age corresponds sufficiently near to one of the Directions calculated by Mr. W. viz. the Sun to his own Semi-quartile in Zodiac, which comes up at 51 years and 7 months of the Native's age, these are my reasons for having selected the time of Birth, etc., given by Mr. Worsdale, and not the *Gentlemanly* language in which he has drawn up his remarks on this Nativity. From what I have seen of Mr. Worsdale's Astrological works, he appears to be what we may call a clever Astrologer, or a Ptolomean; I wish I could compliment him so far as to pronounce him a Mathematician, Philosopher, Politician, or even a man of candor. To be serious, I should be ashamed of a man who could so prostitute his talents by writing such a tirade of falsehood and calumny, on one of the greatest geniuses, and on one of the most meritorious characters that the world ever produced. I would be very sorry to apply such odious epithets to any of the Monarchs now in existence, though many of them are far inferior, both in talents and moral goodness, to the Emperor Napoleon, merely because they might happen to be our adversaries, and because they exercised their authority, with such talent and firmness of mind, as to baffle the perfidious attempts of their enemies, bent on the destruction of themselves, and de-

gradation of their countries. As to Mr. Worsdale's prognostication, that Britain would Reign Triumphant at the end of the contest, is what I have heard many an ignorant man predict, merely because he wished it to be so.

Mr. Worsdale is very profuse in the titles of Tyrant, Murderer, Despot, Ambitious Wretch, Robber and Plunderer, etc., which he bestows on Napoleon, such language leaves us no alternative, but to conclude that Mr. W. was, either an hireling writer, or, otherwise, that, however clever he may be as an Astrologer, he knows nothing of what appertains to the conduct of those in the highest ranks of society, and is ignorant of the Philosophy of the human mind.

Let us ask Mr. Worsdale what a man is fit for who is destitute of ambition ; I will tell him, that a man destitute of ambition is neither fit for a Monarch, a Statesman, a General, an Admiral, a Colonel or Captain, etc. a man without ambition will never become eminent in Mathematics, in Medicine, in Painting, nor in any of the Arts and Sciences ; in fact a man void of ambition is only fit for a Scavenger or to be a day Labourer ; let us just give Mr. Worsdale a gentle hint that it might have been well if Mr. W. himself had had the ambition to have become more proficient in the Mathematics, then he would have known that there is a difference between the Circle of Position, and the Pole of Elevation of a Planet, and he would not have blundered four whole

degrees in each of the cusps of two houses of the figure of Napoleon's Nativity.

As respects Napoleon, no doubt one of the most detestable traits which Mr. Worsdale can discover in Napoleon is, that Napoleon was a Tyrant without being duly qualified by his ancestors : had it so happened that Napoleon's forefathers had followed the same trade or profession (of Tyrants) for ten or a dozen generations before him, Mr. W. would never have complained of the Murders and Tyranny of Napoleon, he would then have been as duly qualified to hang or shoot a man or as many men as he pleased, even if the men were Captains or Dukes, as are our English Demigods of forty or fifty thousand a year, to the exclusive privilege of shooting the vermin called game, bred in their preserves for the destruction of their tenants and poorer neighbors' produce.

No doubt Mr. W. considers Napoleon as a Monstrous Tyrant, because he made others respect the authority with which he was invested ; he was a great Murderer, because he caused an emigrant Duke, and some others, to be executed, because they tried to assassinate Napoleon, and overturn the Government then existing in France, etc., he was a Robber and Plunderer because he enriched himself with the spoils of his enemies, etc., this was certainly too bad that such an upstart creature as Napoleon, should enjoy the same privileges as are claimed by all other officers, whether

German, Russian, Turkish, Swedish, or British, of fattening on the spoils of his enemies. Oh for the good Mr. Worsdale! the liberal minded Mr. Worsdale! let us ask him a question or two; did Mr. W. ever hear tell of British Soldiers and Sailors, Officers and Men, receiving PRIZE MONEY—does Mr. W. know what Prize Money means? O yes, Mr. Worsdale will answer, the English always have a right to Plunder the French or Plunder any other nation; but the French have no right to Plunder the English!! Then to crown all, Mr. W. informs us what a Monster Napoleon was to murder his own men, yes, indeed this is the worst of all, when a number of the French were infected with that incurable malady the Plague, and were suffering under the most excruciating torment and agony, Napoleon, the Monster! he had the inhumanity to order that the duration of their misery should be shortened by administering to each sufferer large doses of Opium! Oh what a Wretch, what a Monster was Napoleon, that he did not let them languish a day or two longer, and then they would have expired in indescribable agonies, which would certainly have been much better than being thus inhumanly put to sleep by Opium. Oh what diabolical deeds! Oh what black atrocity, and rendered still more atrocious by being perfectly Parallel with the practice which prevails in Great Britain, of smothering those persons who have the misfortune to be bitten by mad dogs, and the custom of destroying those poor unfortunate Infants, who are born with monstrous shapes!!!

TABLE,

Of some of the Principal Directions in Napoleon's Nativity.

		Arc. ° '	Y.	M.	
1	Asct. to S□ of ♂ Mundo	2. 19	2	3	
2	M. Celie ☌ ♄	4. 47	5	0	
3	Asct. □ ♄	4. 47	5	0	
4	☽ ✶ ♃ in M. Converse..	7. 42	8	3	
5	☽ ☍ ☿ M. d. d.....	8. 30	9	2	
6	☉ ✶ ♀ in Zodiac	15. 10	16	5	
7	Asct. △ ♀ in Mundo....	20. 50	22	8	
8	☽ ☍ ♀ M. d. c.....	22. 23	24	5	
9	☉ ✶ ♀ M. d. d.....	23. 11	25	5	
10	☉ ✶ ♃ in Zodiac	23. 36	25	9	—Made General of the Armed Force of France.
11	☉ SSq □ ☽ M. d. d....	27. 14	29	9	Defeated in Egypt, and returned home.
12	☉ ☌ ♄ in M. d. c.....	27. 37	30	3	
13	Mid Heaven ☌ ☉	32. 5	35	3	Crowned Emp. of France.
14	Asct. ☌ ♃	34. 17	37	8	
15	☉ Par. ♄ M. d. c.....	36. 33	40	2	Great Danger.
16	☽ △ ♀ in Zodiac.....	37. 29	41	3	
17	☉ △ ☽ in Zodiac.....	37. 41	41	5	
18	Sun Par. ♄ M. d. d.....	39. 6	43	0	In great danger of Death by Slaughter, either civil or hostile, or by himself, by tumults of the people or by HANGING or STRANGLING.
19	Sun Par. ☽ M. d. c.....	39. 8	43	0	
20	Sun Par. ☽ M. d. d.....	40. 25	44	6	
21	Sun R. Par. ♂	41. 41	45	11	
22	☽ ☍ ♂ in Mundo.....	44. 12	48	7	
23	Sun ☌ ♀ in M. d. c.....	46. 42	51	4	
24	Sun to S□ ☉ in Zodiac..	46. 51	51	7	
25	Sun P. ☿ in M. d. c.....	47. 14	52	0	
26	Sun P. ☿ in M. d. d.....	49. 31	54	5	
27	M. Celie ☌ ♂	50. 52	55	10	
28	Asct. □ ♂ Mundo.....	50. 52	55	10	
29	Sun S□ ☉ in Mundo....	51. 23	56	5	

The foregoing Table contains some of the most eminent Directions in the Nativity of this wonderful man, with the corresponding years and months of the Native's age, equated according to the Sun's daily motion in Right Ascension, those who desire a more numerous Table of Directions may easily calculate them by my Planispheres, or they may refer to Mr. Worsdale's pub-

lication of this Nativity containing 106 quarto pages wherein is given a very long Table of Directions, etc., only I would caution them against the illiberal prejudices he displays in (almost) every page of his book. It will be observed that some of the Arcs which I have calculated in the foregoing Table, will be found to differ one or two minutes of a degree from those given by Mr. Worsdale, a matter of no very great importance, as this would only make from one to two weeks difference in the time of the accident. It may not be amiss here to remark that in the Directions especially of the Sun and Moon, it must not be supposed that the Direction is wrong, because the event may not have happened in the exact month calculated in the Table, for it has been found by repeated observation, that the Sun or the Moon directed to the Aspects of, ♄, ♃, ♂, ♀, or ☿, the *event* may anticipate the Direction, or it may not happen so soon, by the space of from three, to six months. But when the Sun and Moon are directed to each other, or to each other's Aspects, this retarding or anticipating may amount to six, or even to twelve months: the reason of which is the great apparent diameter of both the Sun and the Moon, each of these Luminaries being rather more than half-a degree in diameter; while all the Directions are calculated for the centres both of the Planets and of the Luminaries, but the one extreme of each Luminary touches upon the Aspect or Direction before the time calculated, while on the contrary, the other limb or extreme of the Luminary continues in the Direction or Aspect, and prolongs its effects beyond the

time calculated; and I believe that I have discovered that the Arcs of Direction are protracted or curtailed by the effects of Refraction and Parallax; to which may be added the accelerating and retarding effects of the Secondary Directions and Lunar Progressions.

These things duly considered, we find that the Directions, Nos. 16 and 17, correspond sufficiently near to the time of this Native's marriage with the Arch-duchess Maria Louisa, and according to Astrology, are predictive of such an event. While No. 18, the Direction of the Sun to Par. ♄ M. d. d. answers to the Native's defeat in Russia and to his flight therefrom, etc. And No. 20, of the Sun Par. Moon M. d. d. answers to his first abdication of the Throne of France, and retiring to Elba. And the Direction No. 21, viz. the Sun R. Par. ♂, answers wonderfully both to the time and manner of his final overthrow at the Battle of Waterloo.

I must here remark, that the first great Aneretic train of Directions, according to Mr. Worsdale, consists of Nos. 15, 18, 19, 20, 21, and 22, in the preceding table; but Mr. W. placed great reliance on the Sun, R. Par. of ♂, at 45 years, 11 months, that it would prove mortal to the Native, as being the most dangerous and the most powerful. As before observed, this Direction answers to the Battle of Waterloo, and his subsequent surrender to the English, and although he was not slain in battle, his political existence was then effectually destroyed, and his death accelerated, as was no

doubt intended, by his residence in the unhealthy climate of St. Helena. But to speak according to the terms of the Astral Science, the rays of a Benefic falling in the train, this was the 23rd Direction, viz. of the Sun, ☌ ♀, M. d. d. which beginning to operate near the same time as the last named Direction, saved his life, until the Sun Hyleg or Apheta, came to the second great Aneretic train of Directions, consisting of Nos. 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, and 29, of the preceding table, in which, when the Sun came to his own Semi-quartile in the Zodiac, (followed by five other malevolent Directions,) answers most admirably to the time of his Death ! !

That sceptics may be confounded, I have placed Mr. Worsdale's remarks and predictions opposite to certain remarkable Directions, indicating his overthrow and death, published sixteen years before the latter event transpired ! by which they may see that there really exists a Predictive Science, founded on regular and methodieal rules and calculations, so that it is no matter, whether the Planets do, or do not influence men's destinies, as I have fully shewn in my New Theory added to this Treatise.

I will here remark, that there are very strong scientific reasons to conclude that the time of Napoleon's birth as given by Mr. Worsdale, is the correct time ; while the times given in Mr. Orger's, of High Wycombe, in Mr. White's, of Bath, and in some other Publications,

are erroneous and consequently their calculations, etc., founded thereon, have proved incorrect and fallacious. As it is well known to all persons conversant in such matters, that even eight or ten minutes difference in the time of birth, will in many instances make a great difference in the Significations and Directions of a Nativity, in addition to which the judicious artist will always in framing his judgment, take duly into consideration the rank, and situation of the Native's parents, and all other circumstances which have a tendency to accelerate, or to retard, to promote, or to repress any peculiar trait of disposition, or turn of fortune, indicated by the positions, etc. of the Planets in every Nativity. But if the given time of birth be half an hour, or an hour from the true time, what dependence can be placed on any such Nativity, or upon calculations made thereon. It is to the correctness of the time alone of Napoleon's Nativity, that I impute the success of Mr. Worsdale's calculations and predictions, etc., and not to his scientific acquirements, for where any man suffers himself to be ruled by such absurd prejudices, as those possessed by Mr. W., it is utterly impossible for such a one to give a just and impartial judgment on any Nativity, especially of one that he considers an enemy, or even on those of a different religion to himself, as witness his illiberal remarks and predictions (concerning the Roman Catholics, and other dissentients from our Established Church,) annually put forth by him in Partridge's Almanac. It is therefore not very surprising that Mr. W. could not see, or that he would not acknowledge

there was any thing indicated in Napoleon's Nativity, but what was wicked and abominable ; so strong indeed was his prejudice against the French Emperor, that of all the *violent* deaths to which he said Napoleon was in danger, Mr. W. manifested a strong desire that the *restorer* of Monarchy in France, should have ended his Royal and Imperial career by *Hanging* or *Strangling !*

But in this particular Mr. W. again discovers his ignorance of the human mind, and of the maxims of policy which influence the conduct of persons in high life, or how could he for a moment suppose that the Monarchs of Europe would shew so bad and impolitic an example to one of their own fraternity, what man but one entirely blinded by prejudice, would believe that they would ever sanction an act of *public* Regicide (even in the person of Napoleon,) and thereby lessen in their subjects the esteem due to Royal Authority, when they had so many other means of sending their antagonist, the once great King and Emperor much more decently to his quietis ! !

I have no hesitation in asserting, that if Mr. W. had given an impartial judgment, he would have declared to his readers that the Nativity of Napoleon was a most wonderful intermixture of both good and evil.

The Nativity of Napoleon is in itself both a literary and scientific curiosty, highly illustrative of the verity of the Predictive Science, as will be found upon exami-

nation of it, by every intelligent and candid student, in the science; and let it be remembered that Napoleon rose twice to the Imperial dignity, and twice he fell from the same, etc. Mars, lord of his seventh house, which is the natural Significator of his wife, is also the Planetary representative of his irreconcilable enemies the English, the Planet Saturn, with his signs ♑ and ♒, in like manner represent a great part of Germany, also the Countries of Sweden and Russia. It is worthy of remark, that the Directions of Mars to the Sun, or of the Sun to Mars, the Sun being his natural Significator of his hopes, of his life, honor, and dignity, are the most dangerous in the Aneretic train in his geniture, to which the Moon by her opposition and other unfortunate Directions, joins her evil influence with Saturn and Mars, thereby indicating both the time and manner of his downfall.—Now the Moon being lady of the tenth house, which is astrologically the fourth from the seventh house, represents his wife's father, the Emperor of Austria, who eventually proved one of the chief instruments in the ruin and dethronement of his son-in-law, Napoleon. Many other remarkable circumstances in this Native's life, are clearly pointed out in the Celestial constitution of his Nativity, and wonderfully attest the verity of the Predictive Science; there are indeed some intelligent Artists who do not hesitate to say that his Nativity shows that his wife, Maria Louisa, would prove to him, what Delilah proved to Samson; but for the honor of Maria Louisa, and of the ladies in general, I trust it was not so, and from my respect to the fair

sex, I do not say that it was the case. There are in this Nativity sufficient examples of the verity of the Astral Science, without calling in the aid of the last mentioned circumstance.

As I did not profess to give an Astrological judgment, neither was it my plan, nor intention to give a complete or long table of Directions, what I have done is to exemplify their calculation by the Planispheres, I have therefore calculated a Quintile Direction, although Mr. Worsdale has not done so. As that professor published a large book on this Nativity, it was his duty to have calculated all the good Directions, as well as the bad ones, but he has purposely omitted a great part of the good, and expatiated upon the evil Directions and positions in the Nativity of Napoleon !

PLATE 2.

To face page, 129.

A Singular Nativity.

FIGURE I.

R. A. 172. 22

FIGURE II.

CHAPTER IX

A Singular Nativity. (See Plate [illegible])

This is the Nativity of a Young Gentleman, whose [illegible] I finished preparatory to his entering the University of Cambridge, and the Son of a worthy and [illegible] Gentleman, enjoying a princely fortune.

This Young Gentleman, as may be seen by the Celestial Figure, possessed considerable talents, but was of a very gay disposition. This Native gave me the [illegible] of his Birth, soon after he was placed under my [illegible] as being at 6h. P. M. the date as in the centre [illegible] Figure, and stating that the time had been noted very carefully and might be depended upon as correct within two minutes, at the very utmost, did not let the Native know for what purpose I had [illegible] the time of his Birth, etc., as I never informed [illegible] that I knew any thing about the Predictive Science, as it has always been my constant rule never to [illegible] my own private opinions, either to my Pupils or Friends, (unless when strongly requested so to do) I therefore erected the Figure of this Nativity solely for the gratification of my own curiosity.

PLATE 2.

To face page, 189.

A Singular Nativity.

FIGURE I.

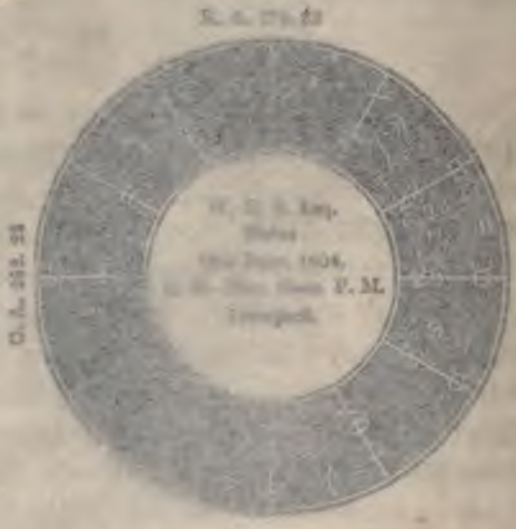


FIGURE II.

CHAPTER IX.

A Singular Nativity. (See Plate 2, Figure 1.)

This is the Nativity of a Young Gentleman, whose Education I finished preparatory to his entering the University of Cambridge, and the Son of a worthy and opulent Gentleman, enjoying a princely fortune.

This Young Gentleman, as may be seen by the Celestial Figure, possessed considerable talents, but was of a very gay disposition. This Native gave me the time of his Birth, soon after he was placed under my care, as being at 6h. P. M. the date as in the centre of the Figure, and stating that the time had been noted down very carefully and might be depended upon as being correct within two minutes, at the very utmost. I did not let the Native know for what purpose I had asked the time of his Birth, etc., as I never informed him, that I knew any thing about the Predictive Science; as it has always been my constant rule never to offer my own private opinions, either to my Pupils or their Friends, (unless when strongly requested so to do,) I therefore erected the Figure of this Nativity entirely for the gratification of my own curiosity.

PLATE 2.

To face page, 129.

A Singular Nativity.

FIGURE I.

FIGURE II.

CHAPTER IX.

Singular Nativity. (See Plate 8, Figure 1.)

is the Nativity of a Young Gentleman, whose
time I finished preparatory to his entering the
versity of Cambridge, and the Son of a worthy and
Gentleman, enjoying a princely fortune.

Young Gentleman, as may be seen by the Co-
Figure, possessed considerable talents, but was
ery gay disposition. This Nativ gave me the
of his Birth, soon after [illegible]
being at 6h. P. M. [illegible]
Figure, and stating [illegible]
were carefully and [illegible]
correct within two minutes, at the very moment
as the Native know for what purpose I had
the time of his Birth, etc., as I never [illegible]
that I knew any thing about the Predictive Part
as it has always been my custom [illegible]
my own private opinions, either [illegible]
Friends, (unless when [illegible]
I therefore erected the Figure [illegible]
for the gratification of my own [illegible]

progressions for any time after the exact lunations may be found, by adding the parts proportional, to the time of the exact lunation required.

The Sun in this Progression, (see Pl. 2, Figure 2,) comes to the Parallel Declination of Mars, in the Nativity, and Jupiter here in Capricorn is in □ to Jupiter's own place in the Radix. Mars here applies to the opposition of Saturn. And Mars in this Progression applies also to the opposition of Jupiter, in the Nativity. We also see, that the Sun who is Apheta or Governor of life and health in the Nativity, is in conjunction with Mercury, here Lord of the Ninth, the House of Sciences and Study, etc., and further, that both the Sun and Mercury in this Progression, are posited in the Eighth, the House of Death!

I have seen many Nativities of which the Lunar Progressions foretold, in a wonderful manner, the sicknesses and death of the Natives, and coincide surprisingly with the Primary Directions of the Nativity, which strongly corroborates the doctrine laid down by Placidus, that when there is a train of Malevolent Primary Directions operating at the same time, with unfavorable configurations in the Lunar Progressions, that the Native's life will be exposed to great danger.

I have not inserted the Part of Fortune in this Young Gentleman's Nativity, which falls according to the common mode, in about 23° of Aquarius, in the Third, but by the Placidian Principles, or True Method, this point falls in the Fifth House of the Figure.

I have declined giving any Astrological judgment on this Nativity, on account of my great respect to the Native's family, in which, I was the only tutor for five years; and when I had concluded my engagement, I was presented with a most handsome written Recommendation, similar to what I had brought from families of the highest respectability.

THE

CELESTIAL PLANISPHERES,

PART III.

Containing some Additional Information, respecting the Use of the Planispheres;

ALSO,

NEW AND IMPROVED FORMULÆ,

For those who are desirous of attaining the greatest possible degree of accuracy in their Calculations,

BY SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY,

Containing Precepts for Calculating the Crespusculine Circles for any Latitude,

AND

Delineating them on the Celestial Planispheres;

ALSO,

For finding the True Mundane Position of the Part of Fortune, with Rules and Precepts for finding its True Zodaical Longitude and Latitude, with the manner of demonstrating the correctness of the same.

TO WHICH IS ADDED,

The Author's New Theory, shewing that Predictions derived from the Aspects, and Positions of the Planets,

MAY REALLY COME TO PASS,

Independent of any Planetry Influence whatever, being founded on Principles,

STRICTLY MATHEMATICAL.

PART III.

CHAPTER I.

To Describe the Circles of Latitude, or Orbits of the Planets, upon the Celestial Planispheres, etc.

First fix the Planisphere of the Zodiac, upon its proper place on the Planisphere of the Nativity, and when thus fixed, mark upon the Planisphere of the Nativity, the places of the Ascending and Descending Nodes of the Moon, or of the Planets, whose orbits you would delineate, and also at the distance of 90° from each Node, make another mark to shew the place of the Planet's greatest latitude, both North and South, next find what the Planet's latitude will be for every 5th degree of the Planet's longitude, reckoning the same from the place of the Nodes. Lastly, having found all these different latitudes, find what the Planet's declination will be, at each place, in the manner taught in Chapter, iii. and Problem 2nd, of the first part of this Treatise, make a dot at each declination, and by drawing a line through all these dots, the orbit of the Moon or Planet will be delineated upon the Planisphere.

N. B. In some of the Planispheres which I formerly constructed, I introduced the Orbits of the Planets, but have since discontinued this practice, as it is not at all necessary in calculating of Nativities; but I have given the method for the sake of those who might be desirous to insert the Circles of Latitude.

TO DESCRIBE THE CREPUSCULINE CIRCLES,

OR

PARALLELS OF TWILIGHT,

UPON THE CELESTIAL PLANISPHERES.

AN EXAMPLE.

Let it be required to delineate the Crepusculine Circles for Latitude $53°\frac{1}{2}$.

In the Tables of Twilight given in Placidus, and in some other Books of Astronomy take out the Sun's Distance from the Horizon, at 18° of depression, to each tenth degree of the Zodiac, and if the Latitude for which you are constructing the Planisphere happens not to be the even degrees of Latitude given in the Tables of Twilight, you add the parts proportional which are due to your required Latitude, as in this Example, the Latitude is between 53° and 54°, therefore half the difference being added to the numbers given in the Table for 53°, gives us what is required for $53°\frac{1}{2}$. As under.

Table of Twilight to $53°\frac{1}{2}$ of Latitude.

♈ 0°	10°	20°	♉ 0°	10°	20°
31.20	32.33	34.33	37.43	42.43	53.35

♍ 0°	10°	20°	♎ 0°	10°	20°	♓ 0°	10°	20°	30°
34.49	34.34	33.57	33.4	32.9	31.23	30.44	30.29	30.38	31.19

On the Northern side of the Equator of the Planisphere, upon the Meridian lines, set off the Declinations belonging ♈ 0°, 10°, 20°, also ♉ 0°, 10°, 20°, draw through these points with a fine pointed black lead pencil, the respective Paral-

lels * of Declination; next upon the Parallel of ♈ 0°, by help of the Equatorial Scale, on the straight edge of the Ecliptic Slider, mark off 31° 20', both from the East and from the West Horizon; upon the Parallel of ♈ 10° in like manner, set off 32° 23', the space of the Crepusculine Parallels for these points of the Zodiac, and also set off 34° 33', and 27° 43', and 42° 43', and 53° 35', upon the Parallels of Declination to which these distances do each of them belong; proceed exactly in the same manner with respect to each tenth degree of the Southern Signs, contained in the foregoing little Table, having done so, join all these distances, that is, draw a fine firm line through all these points with a steel drawing pen and ink, when the ink is dry, erase the black lead lines with india rubber, and the Crepusculine Parallels or Circles of Twilight, will be completed; and in this manner, you may describe upon the Planispheres, the Crepusculine Parallels for any Latitude, by setting off the proper distances, given in the tables of Twilight, for the respective Latitudes. But should it so happen, that they have not the tables of Twilight for the required Latitude of a certain place, I have given precepts, in this Third Part of my Book, for enabling the ingenious student to calculate, with the greatest possible exactness, the Crepusculine Parallel, by the Rules of Spherical Trigonometry.

It is almost unnecessary to add, that the Parallels of the Sun's depression, for 3° 4° 5° etc. may be described by those who will give themselves the trouble to do it, but as I do not approve of Placidus's doctrine, respecting directing the Sun under the Crepusculine Parallels, and obscure spaces, I consider that such mode of direction, not only stands in need of confirmation, but involves itself in several absurdities.

* N. B. These Parallels of Declination may be immediately found by means of the Planisphere of the Zodiac, by placing one foot of your compasses upon the line of the Equator, and extending the other, to the given degree of the Zodiac, perpendicular to that foot of the compass, which is placed upon the line of the Equator.

Many years ago, being desirous of making myself thoroughly master of the Placidian mode of direction, I went through Placidus's Elementary Philosophy twice, each time calculating the directions in the thirty remarkable Nativities, contained in his work, making MS. notes and observations all the while, and I paid particular attention to the modes of directing the Sun, when posited under the Crepusculine Parallels, and obscure spaces, which caused me to write an Essay, or Investigation, on this mode of direction, consisting, in MS., of more than twenty pages, very closely written: being too long to be transcribed into this Treatise (on the Planispheres,) I shall endeavour to give something of the substance of that Essay, in a few lines, which may suffice for the present purpose.

" After thus investigating thoroughly all the various circumstances and all the various Positions under which the Sun can be placed, both under the Crepusculine Parallels, and also in the obscure spaces, it does appear to me very plain that Placidus's precepts for the application of the Eastern difference are, in many respects not only inconsistent, but impossible, I would think that an Equation of two or three degrees at most, added to or subtracted from any Arc of Direction, ought to make it coincide sufficiently near with the time of accidents, but Placidus in using the Ortive, or Eastern difference, applies an Equation of fifteen or sixteen degrees, such a large Equation seems not only irrational and exceeding all just bounds, but to apply it as he directs will sometimes involve an impossibility, as I will presently shew. Placidus directs, one way for applying the Eastern difference when the Sun is in the Morning Parallels of

Twilight, but another way when the Sun is in the Evening Parallels: I would ask Placidus, were he living, for what reason he would make this difference in the way of applying the Ortive distance; I can see no good reason for it, since the Sun's spaces in the Arc of Twilight are the same both on the Morning and Evening of a given day? Now to shew that Placidus's doctrine sometimes involves an impossibility, one Example will be sufficient.

The Sun's Arc of Direction to the Quartile, of Mars, calculated under the Latitude of Birth,	14° 0′
And the Eastern difference	15 35

Now Placidus directs, that in the Evening Crepuscular, the Eastern difference shall be subtracted from the Arc of Direction, calculated under the Latitude of Birth. But tell me how can we subtract 15° 35′ from 14°? the thing is both absurd and impossible; negative quantities, as they are called, may do very well in Algebraical operations, but they are totally inadmissible in Astronomical calculations of this nature. In the four Examples given by Placidus to illustrate the Crepusculine Directions, it is highly probable, that the times of Birth were not correct, the following remarks in my manuscript, confirm me in this opinion.

"It is also worthy of remark, that in the Nativity of Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden, as given by the celebrated Mr. Partridge, in his Defectio Geniturarum, the time of this Birth, was 7h. 13m. Morning, and the

Right Ascension of Medium Celie 195° 22′. Mr. Partridge directs the Sun as Hyleg, without having recourse to Crepusculars, and Partridge's Arcs of Direction, agree perfectly well, with accidents and the time of death ! ! "

I have a complete set of rules for calculating such Directions, composed by myself, but which I shall reserve until another opportunity: in the intermin, I would most earnestly recommend to the Mercurii of London, and to others curious in these Sciences to improve, or totally reject this department of the Placidian doctrine by means of a considerable number of Nativities, say forty or fifty very carefully calculated, in which the Sun is in the Crepuscular, and also in some of them in the obscure spaces, let the given time be the correct time for this purpose, and not to depend upon the times obtained by rectification.

CHAPTER II.

New and Improved Precepts and Formulæ, for the Use of those who are desirous of a very great degree of exactness, in their calculations.

In this chapter, I will give the whole of those rules and precepts necessary, when the calculations for Nativities are performed by the rules of Spherical Trigonometry. Rules for the same purpose have been given in different books which have been published, but they are generally so encumbered with a magnificent display of Mathematical Erudition, with continual references to the different relations of Base and Hypothenuse, etc., and to the Orthographic and Stereographic Projections of the Sphere, etc., that they prove but of little service to the practical calculator, whose only object is to obtain the results or answers, in as little time as possible. Any thing beyond this, is mere waste of both time and labor. I would ask, What matters it to the practical Navigator, who has to work a lunar observation, to talk to him about the fluxions of Spherical triangles, or of their minute increments, and decrements? All that he wants is a correct and expeditious mode of performing his calculations.

There are but very few of the following Formula, but what were actually composed by myself, about twenty years ago. I have reduced them to such a practical form, that any person who understands the adding and subtracting of the Logarithms, Sines and Tangents, will find them perfectly easy, and will make his calculations correctly thereby, without losing a moment's time, to consider of the different relations of the Base and Hypothenuse, etc., but will do his work in a straight forward manner.

Note. Rad. signifies Radius, Tan. Tangent, and C. Tan. stands for Cotangent, Sin. for Sine, C. Sin. for Cosine, Sec. for Secant, C. Sec. for Cosecant, ∠ for Arc or Angle, Dec. for Declination, N. for North, S. South, R. A. for Right Ascension, Ob. A. or O. A. Oblique Ascension, O. D. Oblique Descension, A. X. Ascensional Difference, S. D. A. for Semi-diurnal Arc, S. N. A. Semi-nocturnal Arc, Lon. Longitude, Lat. Latitude, à from, — less, or subtract. Observe. That in calculating by the following Formulæ, all your computations are reckoned straight forward, according to the regular succession of the signs of the Zodiac, and according to the regular increase of the degrees of Right Ascension, (and not sometimes backward and sometimes forward as taught in other books.) For example, if a Planet be in ♋ ♌ or in ♍ his longitude and R A are reckoned from the beginning of Cancer, if in ♎ ♏ or ♐ the lon. and lat. are reckoned from the beginning of Libra, and if in ♑ ♒ or ♓ the longitude and R. A. are reckoned from the beginning of Capricorn

FORMULA, No. 1.

Lon. and Lat. of a Planet being known, to find his R. A. and Declination.

Observe { Lon. and Lat. of } same 90 — lat. = 1st ∠.
{ of different } names 90 + lat. = 1st ∠.

	°	′	″							
As Rad.										
To { Sin. lon. à ♈ or ♎										
{ C Sin. lon. à ♋ or ♑										
So is Tan.	23	28		9.	6	3	7	6	1	0	6
(1st ∠)										
To Tan. of 4th ∠										
from 1st ∠ leaves				for 5 ∠						

Then for the Declination.

C. Sin. 4 ∠ (co-arc)									
or Sec. less 10.									
C. Sin. 5 ∠									
C. Sin.	23	28	9.	9	6	2	5	0	7	6
To Sin. of Dec.									

For the R. A.

C. Sin. Dec. (co-arc)									
or Sec. less 10.									
{ C. S. in Lon. à ♈ or ♎									
{ S. in Lon. à ♋ or ♑									
C. S. in Lat.									
To { C. Sin. in R. A. à ♈ or ♎									
{ S. in R. A. à ♋ or ♑									

FORMULA, No. 2.

Sun's Lon. given to find his R. A.

As Rad.
C. Sin. 23° 28'
Tan. Lon. à ♈ or ♎
C. Tan. Lon. à ♋ or ♑

To { Tan. R. A. à ♈ or ♎
{ C. Tan. R. A. à ♋ or ♑

1	0. 9.	9	6	2	5	0	7	6

FORMULA, No. 3.

Sun's Lon. given to find his Decl.

As Rad,
Sin. 23° 28
{ Sin. Lon. à ♈ or ♎
{ C. Sin. Lon. à ♋ or ♑

To Sin. Decl.

1	0. 9.	6	0	0	1	1	8	1

FORMULA, No. 4.

Or Table of Results.

	R A	Decl.	TanDec	A X	SDA	½	SNA	½
☉								
☽								
♄								
♃								
♂								
♀								
☿								
⊕								

FORMULA, No. 5.

Sun's R. A. given to find his Longitude.

As Rad.
C. Sin. 23° 28'
{ C. Tan. R. A. à ♈ or ♎
{ Tan. R. A. à ♋ or ♑

To { C. Tan. lon. à ♈ or ♎
{ Tan. Lon. à Can. or ♑

1	0.							
	9.	9	6	2	5	0	7	6

FORMULA, No. 6.

Obl. Asc. to find Ecliptic Longitude.

As Rad.
{ C. Sin. O. A. à ♈ or ♎
{ Sin. O. A. à Can. or ♑
C. Tan. Lat. or Pole of House

To C. Tan. of 4th ∠

1	0.							

If O. A. be less than 90° or above 270° + 23° 28' to 4 ∠ but if above 90° and less than 270° difference of 4 ∠ and 23° 28' = 5 ∠. Note, If 5 ∠ be above 90° lon. will fall backward from the point O. A. was taken.

N. B. If 5 ∠ exceed 90° take Sine of its excess above 90° for C. Sine of 5 ∠.

C. Sin. 5 ∠
C. Sin. 4 ∠
{ Tan. O. A. ♈ or ♎
{ C. Tan. O. A. à ♋ or ♑

To { Tan. Lon. à ♈ or ♎
{ C. Tan. Lon. à ♋ or ♑

FORMULA, No. 7.

Given the R. A. and Decl. of ⊕, or of a Planet, to find its Zodiacal Longitude and Latitude

Observe.

If R. A be less than 180° it is North, but more than 180° it is South.

If R. A. and Dec. be both N. or both S. } Sum of 4 ∠ and 23° 28' } = 5 ∠

If R. A. and Dec. be one N. and the other S. } Diff. of 4 ∠ and 23° 28' } = 5 ∠

Then, As Radius Sin. 90°
To { Sin. R. A. à ♈ or ♎
{ C. Sin. R. A. ♋ or ♑
So is C. Tan. Dec.

1	0.						

To Tan. of 4th ∠

\+ or — 23° 28'

Sum or difference is 5 ∠

If 5 ∠ exceed 90° the lat. is of a contrary name. But if 5 ∠ be less than 90°, the lat. is of the same name as the Decl.

2ndly. For the Latitude.

As Cosine 4th ∠
To Cosine 5th ∠
So is Sine Decl.

To Sine of Lat.

3rdly. For the Longitude.

As Sine 4th ∠
To Sine 5th ∠
{ Tan. R. A. à Aries or ♎
{ C. Tan. R. A. à ♋ or ♑

To { Tan. lon. à Aries or ♎
{ C. Tan. lon. à Can. or ♑

The Formulas, No. 1, 2, 3, and 4, I engraved on one side of my astronomical book slate, and the Formulas, No. 5, 6, and 7, I engraved on the other side of the same book slate. This slate is about 13 Inches long, by about 9 Inches broad, exclusive of the frame, it has two backs, or covers, made of well seasoned deal wood, each cover fastened to the frame by two brass hinges, and when shut, it is secured by two neat iron clasps. On the inside of these covers, I pasted in MS. several precepts, which though very useful, were not so needful to be engraved on the slate, comprising all that was requisite in Astronomical calculations. This slate has accompanied me in my travels, for twenty years past, over half the habitable globe, and is as good as ever, it was a grand auxiliary to me before I had constructed my Planispheres, for by help of it I was enabled to perform as many calculations in one hour, as those persons could do in three or four hours, who had no such thing, but were obliged to be referring continually to the different cases of Right Angled, and Oblique Angled Spherical Triangles.

FORMULA, No. 8.

To find what degree of the Ecliptic ascends when the O.A. is exactly 90° *either from Aries or* ♎.

As Radius Sine of 90°
To Sine 23 28
So is Tang. Lat. of Place

To C. Tan. of the Degree, &c. ascending

Note. If the O. A. was reckoned from Aries 90° it will be the Co-tangent of Longitude backwards from Libra, towards Cancer, or the Tangent of Longitude from Cancer forwards towards Libra. But if the O. A. was 90° more than 180°, that is 270°, then it will be the Co-tangent from Libra towards Capricorn.

In using Formula, No. 1, when you enter the tables of Sines and Tangents, to take out the Sine of Longitude, take out also the Co-sine of Longitude, at the same time of opening the book, and place each in its proper place in the Formula, on your slate. And when you take out the Tangent of the fourth Arc, then take out also the Co-sine of the fourth Arc, or its Secant less 10, that is, the Secant less the Radius; and when you find the Sine of Declination, take out also the Co-sine of Declination, and also its Tangent, which Tangent write down in its proper place in Formula, No. 4, and then it will be ready to use for finding the Planet's Ascensional Difference, etc. Observe the same method in using the other Formulæ, as it will greatly economise both time and labor.

FORMULA, No. 9.

To find the Ascensional Difference.

As Radius, Sine of 90°	10.
Is to Tan. of the Planet's Decl.	
So is Tan. of Pole, or of Lat. of Place	
To Sine of Asc. Diff.	

Precept for the Semi-diurnal Arcs.

If the Decl. be North, add A X to 90° the sum will be the Semi-diurnal Arc, but if the Decl. be South, subtract A X from 90°, the remainder will be the Semi-diurnal Arc. Then,

For the Semi-nocturnal Arc.

Subtract the Semi-diurnal Arc of any Planet from 180°, the remainder will be the Semi-nocturnal Arc, or apply the A X in the contrary manner to what is done for the Semi-diurnal Arcs, and the result will be the Semi-nocturnal Arcs.

Precept to Erect or Calculate a Figure of the Heavens by Spherical Trigonometry.

To the R. A. of the Sun add the R. A. in the time of the Birth, &c. from the preceding noon day, the sum, rejecting 360° when it exceeds 360°, will be the R. of M. Celie.

To find the Zodiacal Longitude of the Mid Heaven.

Calculate this by Formula, No. 5. Then to find the Zodiacal degrees upon the Cusps of the other Houses of the Figure, proceed in the following manner. To the R. A. of the M. Celie add 30 degrees, the sum will be the O. A. of the 11th House, to the O. A. of the 11th House add 30 degrees, the sum will be the O. A. of the 12th House; to the O. A. of the 12th House add 30 degrees, the sum will be the O. A. of the Ascendant or 1st House; to the O. A. of the 1st House add 30 degrees, the sum will be the O. A. of the 2nd House, and to the O. A. of the 2nd House add 30 degrees, the sum will be the O. A. of the 3rd House. You may find in the Table of the Poles of Elevation of the Houses what is the Proper Pole or Latitude of each, and then proceed to calculate the degrees and minutes of the Zodiac upon

each Cusp, according to its Polar Elevation by Formula, No. 6, or else by Formula, No. 8, and having found the Cusps of the six Eastern Houses, the other six will be known by placing upon them the same degrees of the signs opposite to the Eastern Houses. The true Poles of the Houses and of the Planets will be clearly explained in the next chapter.

CHAPTER III.

The True Polar Elevations both of the Planets, and the Houses of the Celestial Figure.

From my own manuscript Essay on the True Polar Elevations written nearly 22 years ago, (being eight years before Mr. Cooper in his Edition of Placidus, favored the scientific world with his few hints upon finding the Poles,) I had discovered that the Poles of the Houses are subject to a small variation, according to the difference of the length of the days and nights, dependent on the Sun's Declination and Ascensional Difference, differing at different seasons of the year, and that the same principle holds good as respects the True Polar Elevations of the Planets; but that for general practical purposes, it is necessary to have a fixed Table of the Poles of the different Houses of the Figure, to be always ready for use and reference. In the following Table of the Poles of the Houses agreeable to Ptolemy's division of the heavens, which I am convinced is the only true one, as it agrees both with space and motion in the heavenly bodies: I have made an improvement by adding two additional columns, viz. of the space of Three Houses, and of the space of One House, for each degree of Latitude, for the use of laying off the divisions of the Houses, on the Parallels of Cancer and Capricorn on the Planispheres, with the greatest possible exactness.

THE TABLE.

Lat. Deg.	11th and 3d Poles	12th and 2d Poles	Space of 3 Houses	Space of 1 House	Lat. Deg.	11th and 3d Poles	12th and 2d Poles	Space of 3 Houses	Space of 1 House
	° ′	° ′	° ′	° ′		° ′	° ′	° ′	° ′
1	0 20	0 40	90 26	30 9	31	11 25	21 58	105 7	35 2
2	0 40	1 19	90 52	30 14	32	11 52	22 47	105 44	35 15
3	1 0	1 59	91 18	30 26	33	12 19	23 35	106 23	35 27
4	1 19	2 40	91 44	30 34	34	12 48	24 24	107 2	35 41
5	1 38	3 20	92 11	30 44	35	13 17	25 13	107 42	35 54
6	1 57	4 0	92 37	30 52	36	13 46	26 4	108 23	36 8
7	2 19	4 41	93 3	31 1	37	14 17	26 55	109 6	36 22
8	2 39	5 22	93 30	31 10	38	14 49	27 46	109 50	36 36
9	2 59	6 3	93 57	31 19	39	15 20	28 38	110 35	36 52
10	3 21	6 43	94 23	31 28	40	15 52	29 33	111 22	37 7
11	3 42	7 24	94 50	31 37	41	16 25	30 25	112 10	37 23
12	4 4	8 5	95 18	31 46	42	16 59	31 22	113 1	37 40
13	4 24	8 45	95 45	31 55	43	17 36	32 16	113 53	37 58
14	4 44	9 26	96 13	32 4	44	18 13	33 13	114 47	38 16
15	5 5	10 8	96 41	32 13	45	18 50	34 11	115 44	38 34
16	5 27	10 49	97 9	32 23	46	19 28	35 9	116 43	38 54
17	5 49	11 31	97 38	32 32	47	20 7	36 8	117 45	39 15
18	6 11	12 13	98 7	32 42	48	20 49	37 8	118 50	39 36
19	6 33	12 56	98 36	32 52	49	21 33	38 10	119 58	39 59
20	6 55	13 39	99 6	33 2	50	22 17	39 11	121 9	40 23
21	7 17	14 22	99 36	33 12	51	23 4	40 16	122 25	40 48
22	7 41	15 5	100 6	33 22	52	23 51	41 20	123 45	41 15
23	7 55	15 49	100 37	33 32	53	24 40	42 26	125 11	41 44
24	8 29	16 34	101 9	33 43	54	25 34	43 32	126 42	42 14
25	8 53	17 19	101 41	33 53	55	26 29	44 41	128 19	42 46
26	9 11	18 4	102 14	34 4	56	27 25	45 51	130 4	43 21
27	9 43	18 50	102 47	34 15	57	28 24	47 0	131 57	43 59
28	10 8	19 35	103 21	34 27	58	29 26	48 13	134 0	44 40
29	10 34	20 22	103 56	34 38	59	30 30	49 26	136 16	45 25
30	11 0	21 9	104 31	34 50	60	31 39	50 42	138 45	46 15
	9 & 5th	8 & 6th				9th & 5	8th & 6		

To find the true Poles of the Houses.

By Formula No. 9, find the ascensional difference of the Sun's greatest declination 23o 28, corresponding to the parallel of Cancer and Capricorn, for any latitude you desire, having found the ascensional difference, divide it into three equal parts: one third of the ascensional difference will give the Poles of the 11th and 3rd, 9th and 5th Houses, and two thirds of the ascensional difference will give the Poles of the 12th and 2nd, 8th and 6th Houses, by applying the ascensional difference according to the following Formula.

FORMULA, No. 10.

To find the Pole.

The Declination and Ascensional Difference being given,

As Radius,	10.
To Co-tangent of Declination	
So is Sine Asc. difference	
To Tangent of the Pole	

If the Formula be used to find the Poles of the Houses, use the Co-tangent of 23° 28'; but if used to find the true Pole of a Planet, use the Co-tangent of the Planet's declination. Although Placidus has not condescended to inform us how he got the Polar Elevations of the Houses, yet I am of opinion, he must have calculated the Table of Poles contained in his book, and perhaps by a similar process to that which I have so clearly explained above; all that he has thought fit to disclose on this subject is, that the Poles of the Houses "may be had by doubling the Horary times of a Star, and then refers to the Table of Poles which he has given, but this amounts to no explanation of how he got those numbers, he appears to have thought that was too precious a

piece of information for him to communicate. The Sun's greatest declination in the time of Placidus, was something different to what it is now; this I find makes a small difference in the Poles, amounting in some instances, to about ten minutes of a degree.

To find the Circle of Position has been already taught in the 3rd Chapter of the 2nd Part of this work. Now, observe that the difference of the Planet's distance, and of the Planet's Circle of Position's distance from the 10th or 4th House, is the Planet's ascensional difference and declination as aforesaid. Some persons that are clever Astrologers, etc., have not known the difference between a Planet's Pole of Elevation and the Circle of position, although they are two very different things. In the Nativity of Napoleon, Mr. Worsdale states the Moon's distance from the 4th, to be 7° 17', and that her true Circle of Position is 3° 28'. Now I state positively that Mr. Worsdale is mistaken in this matter, her distance is 7° 17', but the Moon's true circleof Position is 6° 11' from the 4th, which gives her ascensional difference 1° 6', her declination is 17° 23', which gives her true Pole 3° 30½', and not what Mr. Worsdale says. So much for the blunders of the modern Ptolemy, who wishes every monarch, elected as the choice of any nation, to die a violent death!!

CHAPTER IV.

Of the Part of Fortune or Lunar Horoscope.

THIS Point in the Heavens, where the rays of the Sun and Moon are concentrated, or brought to a focus, is still but imperfectly understood by the generality of Students. Placidus, after the ancient Ptolemy, appears to be the only Author who properly understood this matter, but Placidus has expressed himself in so obscure and difficult a manner, that it is requisite that another Author should explain Placidus's principles, in a better and clearer manner than he himself has done. I have therefore submitted my own explanation and rules, for those who may desire to understand this matter clearly. Therefore,

In any Nativity, the Part of Fortune is always as far from the degree and minute of the Zodiac Ascending, as the Moon would be distant from the Sun, if the Sun was placed on the very Point ascending, in degrees of Oblique Ascension, the Zodiacal places of the Sun and Moon in this finding of distance, being precisely the same as in the Nativity. The Oblique Ascensions of both Sun and Moon, being taken under the Latitude of Birth ; hence :

To find the O. A. of Part of Fortune.

Substract Oblique Ascension of the Sun, from the Oblique Ascension of the Moon; the remainder is the distance of the Moon from the Sun, which distance add to the O. A. of the 1st House, the sum is the O. A. of Part of Fortune.

Note. If the O. A. of the Moon, be less than the O. A. of the Sun; add 360° to the O. A. of the Moon, and subtraction can then be made.

Then to find the R. A. of ⊕.

If the Decl. of ☽ be { North / South } { add / take } { Ascl.diff. of the ☽. } to { fm. } { O. A. of the / P. Fortune. }

The sum or remainder, will be the Rt. Ascension of Part of Fortune, having precisely the same Declination as the ☽, both in name and in quantity. And the Rt. Ascension and Declination of this point being thus known, its Zodiacal Longitude and Latitude may both be truly found by Formula, No. 7.

EXAMPLE.

Required the true Mundane Position, and the Right Ascension, of Part of Fortune, in the Nativity of the Emperor Napoleon.

The R. A. of the Moon is	300. 16
Ascensional Difference, add	16. 10
Oblique Ascension of the Moon is	316. 26
Subtract the O. A. of the Sun	132. 18
Distance of the Moon from the Sun is	184. 8
Which is the Distance of P. Fortune from the Ascendant	
To which Add the O. A. of the Ascendant	202. 59
	387. 7
Reject	360.
The Remainder is the O. A. of P. Fortune	27. 7
Asel. Diff. of P. Fortune Subtract	16. 10
Rt. Ascen. of this point is	10. 57

And therefore its Mundane Position 77° 58' from the cusp of the Fourth House.

We will now by Formula, No. 7, proceed to find the Longitude and Latitude of ⊕, in Napoleon's Nativity.

The Right Ascension is 10° 57', and Decl. 17° 23' South.

As Radius			10.0000000
To Sine R. A. à ♈	10° 57'	"	9.2786445
So is Co-tang. Decl.	17 23		10.5043702
To Tang. of 4 ∠	31 14 51½	=	9.7830147
—	23 28		
Diff. is 5 ∠	7 46 51½		
Then for the Latitude			(9.9319357)
As Co-sine 4 ∠	31° 14' 51½"	(Co-arc)	0.0680643
To Co-sine 5 ∠	7 46 51½		9.9959837
So Sine Decl.	17 23		9.4753271
To Sine Latitude	20 15 25	South	9.5393751
For the Longitude			(9.7149472)
As Sine of 4 ∠	31° 14' 51½"	(Co-arc)	0.2850528
To Sine of 5 ∠	7 46 51½		9.1315716
So is Tang. R. A. à ♈	10 57		9.2866245
To Tan. Lon. à 0° ♈ 0' = 2	53 25		8.7032489

Being the Part of Fortune's Zodiacal Latitude and Longitude true to a second. Now to prove this Zodiacal Latitude and Longitude are correctly found, we will use them in finding the R. A. and Declination, by Formula, No. 1, as follows, in the Nativity of Napoleon, by the foregoing calculations.

To the given R. A. of ⊕, 10° 57', and Declination, 17° 23' S. the Zodiacal Longitude of ⊕ was found 2° 15' 25" of Aries, and ⊕'s Latitude, 20° 15' 25" South.

It is now required to prove this Longitude and Latitude correct, by calculating the Declination and R. A. from the given Long. 2° 53' 25" Aries, and Latitude 20° 15' 25" South. Thus,

As Radius		10.0000000
To Sine Long. à Aries	2° 53' 25"	8.7026327
So is Tang.	23 28	9.6376106
(From 1st ∠	110 15 25	
To Tang. 4th ∠	1 15 14	8.3402433
Leaves 5th ∠	109 0 11	
Use C. Sin. complt. to 180° =	70 59 49	because it exceeds 90°
Or Sine of its excess	19 0 11	above 90°

For the Declination.

As Co-sine of 4th ∠	1° 15' 14"	(Co-arc)	0.0001038
Is to Co-sine 5th ∠	109 0 11		9.5127092
Co-sine	23 28		9.9625076
To Co-sine of Declination	17 23		9.4753206

For the R. A.

Co-sine Declination or Secant less 10	17° 23' 00"	(Co-arc)	0.0203027
Co-sine Long. à Aries	2 53 25		9.9994472
Co-sine Latitude	20 15 25		9.9722720
Co-sine R. A. à Aries	10 57		9.9920219

It has hitherto been generally believed, that if the Part of Fortune was found according to its Mundane Position, that its place in the Zodiac could not be known, this I have heard asserted by very expert artists, but I have here shown the method, by which this can be done with very great exactness.

N. B. In the foregoing Formulæ and Examples, the Logarithms of the Sines and Tangents, etc., are given to seven places of figures besides the Index, seven places are only required when you calculate to seconds of a degree; six figures or even five figures, as in the common Tables of Logarithms, are quite sufficient, when you calculate only to minutes of a degree. For very accurate calculations to seconds, Callet's Stereotyped French Tables are vastly superior to Dr. Hutton's Tables. It is a disgrace to the English Mathematicians that they have not a set of Tables, printed in England, exactly the same as Callet's, with an English Introduction.

CHAPTER V.

To Calculate the Crepusculine Parallels Illustrated by proper precepts and an Example, etc.

PROBLEM I.

Having the time of the day and night given, or the Sun's distance from the Horizon, to find his

CREPUSCULINE PARALLEL OF DEPRESSION.

Knowing the Latitude of the Place, the Sun's distance from the South Pole, the Angle at the Pole, the Semi-diurnal Arc and the distance from Six o'clock.

To find the Angle at the Pole. Add the distance from the Horoscope, to the Semi-diurnal Arc, the Sum will be the Angle at the Pole.

For the time from Six o'clock. The difference between the Angle at the Pole and 90°, is the distance from Six o'clock. If the Angle at the Pole be less than 90°, then the time is after Six in the Morning, and before Six at Night. But if the Angle at the Pole be more than 90°, then the time is before Six in the Morning, or after Six in the Evening. Then observe,

1st. If the Angle at the Pole be less than 90°, the 4th Arc must be added to the Sun's distance from the South Pole. But if the Angle at the Pole be more than 90° then subtract the 4th Arc from the South Pole, the Sum, or the difference, is the 5th Arc.

2ndly. If the Sun's Declination be North, then it must be added to 90°, and the Sum is the distance from the South Pole. But if the Declination be South, subtract it from 90°, and the remainder is the distance from the South Pole.

The Analogy to find the Sun's Depression is,

As Radius, Sine 90° 10.
To Co-tangent of Latitude of the Place
So is Sine of Sun's dist. from Six o'clock

To Tangent of 4th Arc

Then say,

As Co-sine of 4th Arc
To Co-sine of 5th Arc
So is Sine of Latitude of the Place

To Sine of Sun's Depression

Now to exemplify this Problem, we will refer to one of the Nativities given by Placidus, viz. that of Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden, the R. A. of M. Celie 202° 27′, and therefore the O. A. of Horoscope, was 292° 27′, the Sun being in 27 ♐ 14, his distance then from the Horoscope, is 20° 48′, the Place of the Aspect to the integral degree 25° ♒, to the ☌ ♄ in the Zodiac. Placidus stated the greatest obliquity of the Ecliptic at 23° 32′, the Latitude of the Place of Birth was 59°, North. These particulars being known, let it be required by this Problem, to find the Sun's Depression below the Horizon, to the integral degree of ♐ 28°, when his distance from the Horoscope is 20° 48′.

In this proposed Example, the Semi-diurnal Arc of 28 *t* is 43° 33′ its Declination 23° 31′ South, therefore the Sun's distance from the South Pole is 66° 29′. Then,

The Semi-diurnal Arc	43°	33′	} add
Distance from the Horoscope	20	48	}
Angle of the Pole	64	21	

The difference between which and 90°, is 25° 39′, the distance from 6 o'clock; now, since the Angle at the Pole is less than 90° (per rule) the time is between six in the morning and six at night.

As Radius			10.00000
To Co-tangent of Latitude	59°		9.77849
So is Sine of Sun's distance	25	39′ from 6 o'clock	9.63636
To Tangent of 4th Arc	14	34	9.41485
Add dist. from S. Pole	66	29	
The sum is 5th Arc =	81	3	

Then say,

As Co-sine of 4th Arc	14	34	(co-arc)	0.01419
To Co-sine of 5th Arc	81	03		9.19193
So is Sine of Latitude	59	00		9.93314
To Sine of Sun's depression	7	55		9.13926

Whence it is evident that Placidus in taking the Sun's depression at 8°, reckoned it too great by 5 minutes of a degree.

PROBLEM II.

Having the Sun's Depression below the Horizon to find his Distance from the Horoscope.

In working this Problem there are given, the Sun's ascensional difference, whereby is found the Semi-diurnal Arc; the zenith distance, the complement of the Latitude of the Place, and the Sun's distance from the North Pole, the part required is the Angle at the Pole. Observe, if the declination be North, subtract it from 90°, the remainder is the distance from the Pole; but if the declination be South, add the declination to 90°, the sum will be the Sun's distance from the North Pole. For the zenith distance, always add 90° to the depression.

Having by calculation found the angle at the Pole, subtract the Semi-diurnal Arc from the angle at the Pole, the remainder will be the distance from the Horoscope required.

EXAMPLE.

In the Nativity of Gustavus Adolphus let it be required to find the distance of ♒ 25° from the Horoscope, when its depression below the Horizon is 7° 55'. Now, observe the declination of 25 ♒ is taken at 13° 14' South, and the ascensional difference 23° 2', and the Semi-diurnal Arc 66° 58.

OPERATION.

	°	'	
Complement of Latitude	31	00	
Distance from the N. Pole	103	14	
Distance from the zenith	97	55	
Sum	232	9	
Half	116	4½	or 63° 55½'
Zenith distance subtract	97	55	
X =	18	9½	

As Radius, Sine of	90			10.00000
To Co-sine of Latitude	59			9.71163
So is Co-sine of Decl.	13	14		9.98831
To Sine of a 4th Arc	30	4		9.69994

Then say,

As Sine of 4th Arc	30	4	(co-arc)	0.30016
So is Sine of ½ Sum's compt. to 180°	63	55½		9.95338
So is Sine of X	18	9½		9.49366
Sum of Logarithms				19.74720
Half is Co-sine of	41	38		9.87360
When doubled	×	2		
Is the angle at the Pole	83	16		
Semi-diurnal Arc subtract	66	58		
There remains	16	18	the distance from the Horoscope which Placidus makes 16° 33', this is what he calls the secondary distance under the Crepusculine Parallel.	

From ☉'s primary distance to 28° ♐	=	20° 48'
Subt. the secondary dist. of 25 ♒		16 18
There remains the correct Eastern difference		4 30

But Placidus

From the primary distance of 28° ♐		20° 48'
Takes his secondary distance of 25 ♒		16 33
Placidus makes the Eastern difference		4 15

So that the Eastern difference taken by Placidus is too small by 15 minutes of a degree, no doubt owing to the inaccuracy of his tables, etc. When any person wishes for extreme exactness, they will, by the mathematical tables of the Sines and Tangents, obtain their results with a degree of correctness far superior to any tables given in Books of Astronomy.

Application of Eastern Difference according to Placidus,

IN THE MORNING CREPUSCULARS.

The Sun posited in the Ascendant, the 2nd or 3rd House, if the secondary distance be less than the primary distance, add Eastern difference to the Sun's Arc of direction calculated in the Horoscope, that is to the Oblique Ascensions for the latitude of Birth. But if the secondary distance be greater than the primary distance, subtract the Eastern difference from the Sun's Arc of direction calculated in the Horoscope, the remainder is the true Arc of direction calculated in the Crepusculine Circle, so says Placidus.

In the Evening Crepusculars.

If the secondary distance be greater than the primary distance, the Eastern difference must be added to the Sun's Arc of Direction, calculated in the Horoscope. But if the secondary distance be less than the primary distance, the Eastern difference must be subtracted from the Sun's Arc of Direction calculated in the Crepusculine Parallels, conformable to the principles of Placidus.

In the example given from Placidus of the sun to the opposition of Saturn in the zodiac, this Arc of Direction calculated in the Horoscope

Is	37°	36
The secondary distance being less than the primary distance, add the Eastern differ.	4	30
The true Arc of Direction calculated in the Crepusculine Parallels is	42	6

CHAPTER VI.

How to calculate Tables of Houses, for any Latitude by means of the Celestial Planispheres.

THAT correct Tables of Houses for the different degrees of Latitude, and of places situated in any intermediate degrees, and parts of degrees, from the Equator, to 60° of Latitude, are much wanted, is well known to all persons any way conversant with the Astronomical Sciences; but the trouble of constructing a Table of Houses, by any of the methods hitherto known, is so very great, that scarcely any person can be found to undertake it; the consequence of which is, that there are no Tables of Houses, on the principles of Ptolemy, except for London, and a very few other places. As for the Tables of Houses, perhaps to the number of ten or twelve, published by Mr. John Gadbury, about 150 years since, they are good for nothing, as they neither agree with the times, nor with the motions of the heavenly bodies, having been calculated according to the erroneous principles laid down by Regiomontanus. Ptolemy's principles which I follow, being the only true division of the Heavens.

To shew at once how great the trouble of calculating even one Table of Houses only, would be, by any of the

usual methods, it is only necessary to remind the reader, that besides the two left hand columns of the Table, containing the Sun's Right Ascension in degrees and minutes, and the corresponding time from Noon, which stand opposite to each integral degree of the Zodiac, the Table consists of six other columns, containing the the six Eastern Houses of the figure, for every degree of the Sun's place in the Zodiac, and therefore, it contains $360 \times 6 = 2160$ cusps, and out of each six of them, five would require to be calculated by Formula, No. 6, of the 2nd Chapter in the third part of this work, and consequently would require the calculation of $360 \times 5 = 1800$ Oblique Spherical Triangles, besides the writing down of the other three columns, which three columns contain $360 \times 3 = 1080$ different numbers, and all this trouble would be required, in order to construct a Table of Houses, for any one place which you might desire, and would require a long time for its accomplishment. But by means of these Celestial Planispheres, and by observing the following directions, you will be enabled to construct a correct Table of Houses, (which will be found convenient to carry in your pocket) for any place, all of which may be done in half a day, or even less, by an expert penman.

A Specimen of the Head of the first page of a Table of Houses.

SOL IN ARIES.							
A. R.	Time from Noon	10 House.	11 House.	12 House.	1st or Ascend.	2 House.	3 House.
D. M.	H. M.	Aries. Degrees.	D. M.	D. M.	D. M.	D. M.	D. M.

Observe that D. M. stand for degree and minute, and that between D. and M. it is usual to place the Astronomical character for the sign of the Zodiac, which occupies the cusp of each respective House, but it is by no means necessary to calculate the cusps of the Houses to minutes of a degree, the nearest integral degree being in most cases sufficiently exact.

The second page of the Table is titled Sol in Taurus, the third page, Sol in Gemini, and so in regular succession for all the twelve signs of the Zodiac; having provided yourself with a book or paper sufficiently large to contain eight columns, here shewn as an Example, besides the head of each Table or page, rule thirty one lines, in each page, and under the column of the Tenth House, write 0°, 1°, 2°, 3°, etc. up to 30° inclusively. Having titled each page Sol in Aries, Sol in Taurus, Sol in Gemini, Sol in Cancer, Sol in Leo, Sol in Virgo, Sol in Libra, Sol in Scorpio, Sol in Sagitarius, Sol in Capricorn, Sol in Aquarius, Sol in Pisces, each in succession, and having divided each page into eight columns, and ruled them all as before directed, you may then proceed to fill up and complete your Table in the following easy, and expeditious manner.

Take the Planisphere of the Twelve Houses of the Heavens, constructed to the Latitude of the Place for which you would wish to form your Table Houses, and begin thus, bring no degrees of Aries, that is the very beginning of Aries, on the Planisphere of the Zodiac, exactly to the cusp of the Tenth House, in this position

let it remain, and observe what signs and degrees are intersected by the Poles, or cusps of the 11th, 12th, 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Houses, and write down the same in the proper columns in your Table. Next bring Aries 1° exactly to the cusp of the Tenth, and observe again what signs and degrees are intersected by the Poles of the 11th, 12th, 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Houses, and write them down in your Table, proceed in this manner through every degree of the Zodiac, until your Table of Houses shall be completed.

N. B. When by sliding the Planisphere of the Zodiac from the left hand towards the right, upon the Planisphere of the Twelve Houses, it happens not to shew all the 6 Eastern Houses of the Figure, it will in this case shew all the 6 Western Houses, viz. the 9th, 8th, 7th, 6th, 5th, and 4th Houses, in this case, to fill up the Table, you have only to write down the same degrees of the opposite signs; or, if you would have all the Eastern Houses shewn by the Planisphere, you have only to mark upon the Planisphere of the Twelve Houses, with a fine pointed black lead pencil, the place where sagittary ended, shift the Planisphere of the Zodiac, and bring the beginning of Capricorn to this mark, and being fixed as before taught, it will in this position complete the Figure of the Heavens, and shew all the Eastern Houses, which were before wanting. The same method of shifting the Planisphere of the Zodiac, must be observed when necessary in describing the line of the Ecliptic or Zodiac, upon the Planisphere of any Nativity.

CHAPTER VII.

Supernumerary Circles of Aspects, etc.

In order to render this work more useful, and still more acceptable, the Author has been at the pains of calculating to the very nearest minute of a degree throughout, a table, whereby the Circles of the Semiquartile and Sesquiquadrate and of the Quintile, and even the Biquintile Aspects, can be most easily and expeditiously described upon the Celestial Planispheres, on the parallels of ♋ and ♑ respectively, together with the true Polar Elevations of the same. And let it be remembered, that the Circle of Position's distance for the Semiquartile and Sesquiquadrate marked upon the Equator, is always 45°, and that of the Quintile 12° for every latitude whatever, set off from the cusps of the tenth and fourth Houses upon the Planisphere. After so much instruction in the former part of this book, a single example will be sufficient—Suppose it were required to introduce these Circles into a Planisphere for Port Royal in Jamaica, in 18 degrees of North latitude. Look in the table of Proportions, and opposite to 18° of latitude in the column marked S □ and Ssq. □ you will find 49° 3′ the distance (from the 10th and 4th Houses) to be marked upon the parallels of ♋ and of ♑, the Pole for the same, as given in the next column,

is 9° 14′, the proportion for the Quintile in the same table is 13, 5′ to be marked upon the parallels of ♋ and ♑ from the 10th and 4th Houses as aforesaid, the true Pole of the same as given in the table is 2° 30′. Next mark upon the Equator the distance of 45° for the Semiquartile and Sesquiquadrate and 12° for the Quintile, then with the Planisphere Curves or Poles of 9° and 3, respectively, draw lines through the marks at the proper distances just mentioned, and you will have the Circles of the Semiquartile and Sesquiquadrate and of the Quintile Aspects as was desired. For a good illustration of this projection, see Plate No. 5, the Planisphere for latitude 53° 30′.

Observe, That the Circle of the Quintiles, serves also for the Biquintiles, by setting off twice the proportional part of the Quintile from the point or place where the trine of any Planet happens to fall upon the parallel declination of the same Planet, taking care that the proportional part must be taken by your compasses from and upon the Planet's own parallel. The aforesaid Circles, described upon the parallels of Cancer and Capricorn, will always give in the most easy and expeditious manner proportions for the Semiquartile and Sesquiquadrate, and for the Quintile and Biquintile Aspects, and their Arcs of Direction upon the parallel of any Planet whatever. Suppose you would know the exact place where a Planet is in Quintile to the Mid-Heaven, place one foot of your compasses on the cusp of the 10th, upon the Planet's own parallel, and extend the other

foot of your compasses to the place where the Circle of the Quintiles intersects the same parallel; set off this distance from the Pole of the 12th House towards the Ascendant upon the Planet's own parallel, and in like manner set off this distance from the Pole of the 8th House towards the 7th, when at either of the points thus found, then will a Planet be in Quintile to the Mid-Heaven. By taking the aforesaid distance in your compasses and applying it from the Pole of the 11th towards the 10th and also from the Pole of the 3rd towards the 4th House upon the Planet's own parallel, will immediately give the place where any planet will be in Quintile to the Ascendant.

The Rapt Parallels may be worked with great facility by means of the Circles of Quintiles in the second manner taught in page 106, provided that the Right Distance between any two planets does not exceed in extent the proportions for the Quintiles of both the said Planets. Thus, it will be seen, by a little attention to the instructions given in this work, that all kinds of Directions both Mundane and Zodiacal, can be calculated with great ease and expedition by means of these Planispheres.

Observations on the Circles of Position of the Planets.

Observe; If a Planet be under the Horizon, and its declination be North, then will the distance of its Circle of Position upon the Equator be greater than the Pla-

net's distance in R. A. from the 4th House. But if above the horizon, with North Declination, then will the distance of its Circle of Position on the Equator, be less its Distance, in Rt. Asc., from the tenth House. Secondly, If any Planet having South Declination be under the horizon, then will the distance of its Circle of Position upon the Equator be less than the Planet's distance in Rt. Asc. from the 4th House. But if any Planet having South declination, be above the horizon, then will the distance of its Circle of Position upon the Equator, be greater than the Planet's distance in Rt. Asc. from the tenth House.

TABLE OF PROPORTIONS,

For setting off the Circles of the Semiquartile and Sesquiquadrates, and of the Quintile and Biquintile Aspects, upon the Celestial Planispheres.

Lat.	S □ & Ssq. □	Pole of S □ & Ssq. □	Quint. etc.	Pole of Quint. etc.	Lat.	S □ & Ssq. □	Pole of S □ etc.	Quint.	Pole of Quint.
	° ′	° ′	° ′	° ′		° ′	° ′	° ′	° ′
1					31	52 33	16 50	14 1	4 38
2	45 26	1 0	12 6	0 14	32	52 52	17 30	14 6	4 49
3	45 39	1 30	12 10	0 23	33	53 11	18 9	14 11	5 1
4	45 52	2 0	12 14	0 32	34	53 31	18 50	14 16	5 12
5	46 5	2 30	12 17	0 39	35	53 51	19 31	14 22	5 26
6	46 18	3 0	12 21	0 48	36	54 11	20 11	14 27	5 37
7	46 31	3 29	12 24	0 55	37	54 33	20 55	14 33	5 51
8	46 45	4 1	12 28	1 5	38	54 55	21 38	14 39	6 5
9	46 58	4 31	12 32	1 14	39	55 17	22 21	14 45	6 18
10	47 11	5 1	12 35	1 21	40	55 41	23 7	14 51	6 32
11	47 25	5 33	12 39	1 30	41	56 5	23 53	14 57	6 46
12	47 39	6 5	12 42	1 37	42	56 30	24 40	15 4	7 2
13	47 52	6 34	12 46	1 46	43	56 56	25 28	15 11	7 17
14	48 6	7 6	12 50	1 55	44	57 23	26 17	15 18	7 33
15	48 20	7 38	12 53	2 2	45	57 52	27 10	15 26	7 51
16	48 34	8 9	12 57	2 11	46	58 21	28 0	15 34	8 9
17	48 49	8 43	13 1	2 20	47	58 52	28 54	15 42	8 27
18	49 3	9 14	13 5	2 30	48	59 25	29 50	15 51	8 48
19	49 18	9 48	13 9	2 39	49	59 59	30 47	16 0	9 8
20	49 33	10 21	13 13	2 48	50	60 34	31 43	16 9	9 28
21	49 48	10 55	13 17	2 57	51	61 12	32 44	16 19	9 50
22	50 3	11 28	13 21	3 6	52	61 52	33 45	16 30	10 15
23	50 18	12 1	13 25	3 16	53	62 35	34 50	16 41	10 39
24	50 34	12 36	13 29	3 25	54	63 21	35 57	16 53	11 6
25	50 50	13 11	13 33	3 34	55	64 9	37 5	17 7	11 37
26	51 7	13 47	13 38	3 46	56	65 2	38 17	17 20	12 5
27	51 23	14 22	13 42	3 55	57	65 58	39 30	17 36	12 40
28	51 40	14 58	13 47	4 6	58	67 0	40 48	17 52	13 15
29	51 58	15 37	13 51	4 15	59	68 8	42 9	18 10	13 54
30	52 15	16 13	13 56	4 27	60	69 22	43 33	18 30	14 37

CHAPTER VIII.

Conclusion of this Treatise.

THE Author's New Theory, shewing that Predictions derived from the Aspects and Positions of the Planets, may really come to pass, independently of any Planetary influence whatever, being founded on principles

STRICTLY MATHEMATICAL.

Having in the course of my studies, read almost every work, of any note, which has ever been published, both for and against the doctrines or principles of Astrology, I was led by my own reflections to conclude, that, however illiberal and unreasonable the enemies of Astrology are, in denying in so positive a manner, the very existence of the Predictive Science, that the friends of that Science erred in the opposite extreme, by imputing every event to Planetary influence, whereas, it was neither requisite to account for the various accidents of life, by imputing them either to mere chance, or to inevitable fate, or to planetary influence, when in reality the Predictive Science may depend upon very different principles which have escaped their observation; but which I believe it has been my lot to discover.

To those conversant with Mathematical literature, it is almost unnecessary for me to observe, that there are many solutions and results of Mathematical calculations which appear so very wonderful, and so far surpassing the comprehension of the unlearned, as to pass with them for the operations of magic; the reason of which is, that when men are ignorant, they are generally superstitious, and superstition whether in matters of religion, or of science, will generally ascribe things to any cause, but the *true one*.

In the eastern parts of the world, particularly in Egypt and Arabia, where the atmosphere is during a great part of the year clear and serene, the beauty and splendor of the heavenly bodies, and the rising, southing, and setting of the Sun, Moon, and Planets, could not fail of attracting both the attention and admiration of men, particularly those employed by night, in tending their flocks and herds, in the very early ages of the world. And as the heavenly bodies in performing their revolutions, approach toward, and recede from each other, and sometimes present certain phenomena, which are very remarkable, at or near the time of these phenomena, some notable event, happening to themselves, or to their wives, or children, or even to their cattle, would be noted down, and being found to have taken place, at or near the time of the celestial phenomena, which had so much attracted their attention, they concluded because they could discern no other reason, that there must be some influence in the Planets which had

brought to pass the circumstance or event, which had occurred to themselves, or to some member of their family; and accordingly as the accidents or events were fortunate or unfortunate, they would regard some of the Planets as their Evil Genii, and others of the Planets as their Guardian Angels, * whose watchful eyes were always observing, and whose splendid rays were ever shedding an influence over, and ruling all their actions, and their destinies.

Impressed with such belief as this, they would thus add observation to observation, till a number of Aphorisms, (adapted to various circumstances, and different configurations,) had been formed, whereby they might endeavor to foresee and predict, the occurrence of similar events to themselves or to others. And in this manner a system of Predictive Science has been built up, even without its architects having the least knowledge of the true principles, upon which they have built their superstructure, but which I will endeavor to illustrate by arguments, drawn from some of the practical Aphorisms of Astrology. Thus in the primitive ages of the world, the Astronomers had observed that the cardinal signs, occupying the angles of the Horoscope, or celestial figure, the persons born at such times, became eminent among their companions, or even rose above the class of Society in which they were born. Hence they concluded there must certainly be some par-

* For a confirmation of the correctness of the Author's opinion on this point, see Ramsay and other old books of Astrology, where the Angels of the Planets are mentioned by name.

ticular influence in such a position of the Heavens. Many hundreds of instances of persons thus born, rising to great eminence, have been recorded in different ages of the world. I shall only name a few that are mentioned, as Cicero, the Roman Orator, the Emperor Vespasion, Oliver Cromwell, and the Emperor Napoleon, etc. But it by no means follows that the cardinal signs being upon the angles in their Nativities, that their great rise in the world depended upon such positions, nor that there was any connexion between them, as of cause and effect. Here let it be remembered, that, in the primitive ages, the Science of Astronomy, was studied and practised, only for the sake of applying it to the purposes of Astrology, and that the Ancient Astronomers were all Astrologers, and that without Astrology, we should never have had that sublime Science, Modern Astronomy, which above all books, and all other learning, gives us the most enlarged and the most elevated views of the infinite power, wisdom, and goodness of the Omnipotent and All-wise Creator. Well then, by way of practical illustration, let us admit that one of those ancient Astronomers had observed that the cardinal signs were on the angles in the Nativities of twenty persons, born under his own knowledge or observation, and that eighteen out of the twenty so born, rose to eminence, or were remarkably prosperous, he would look upon it as almost certain, that persons born under such a position, must rise to eminence, and he would note it down as an Astrological Aphorism for his future guidance, and in this manner, from the ob-

servations of the Conjunctions, Sextiles, Quartiles, and Oppositions of the Planets, and from other Celestial Phenomena, and of events, happening at or near the same times, he would form a collection of Astrological Aphorisms, which would be handed down to his children or successors, from whom they would receive farther additions and improvements, until a science or system of Prediction had been formed, which was applicable to all the accidents and events of human life.

But I believe, that I have discovered the true theory of the Predictive Science, to consist entirely in the principles of the Mathematical doctrine of probabilities, and if there be any difference in the results, it will be in favor of the Predictive Science, for can it be supposed, even by the most rancorous enemies of Astrology, that there is not amongst the thousands and tens of thousands of persons, who study and practise Astrology, many men who possess as good reasoning faculties, and are blest with intellectual powers equal to those of the most learned, and most judicious of their opponents? Can it be supposed that they would be in the practice of making the laborious calculations, hitherto required, in Nativities, and that they would continue to give themselves this toil and trouble, for twenty, thirty, or even forty years in succession? Let us ask, would they do this if they did not find some, and not only some, but a very considerable number of the Predictions founded on such calculations really come to pass?

In a practical point of view as regards the results of

the calculations made use of, it is a matter of no importance to the Astrologer, or to the calculator, whether the Predictions depend on Planetary influence as he believes they do, or upon some other principles which he does not understand ; it is sufficient for his purpose, that the events do really come to pass, and of this every artist, or student, who has studied and practised the Science for a number of years, has had so many convincing proofs of its verification, that he would not be made to disbelieve the existence of a Predictive Science, by all the arguments and by all the sarcasms of its enemies.

Now in order to complete the parallel which I have drawn between the Science of Astrology, and the Mathematical Doctrine, or Science of Probabilities, in the assumed case of the twenty persons born with the cardinal signs on the angles of their Nativities, the Aphorism was verified in eighteen cases in the twenty, and that it failed in two cases in the twenty, here we find the ratio in favor of the verification of the Aphroism to be 18-20ths or 9-10ths, and the ratio of its failure 2-20ths or 1-10th, and therefore the probability that any Native born under such a position of the Heavens will rise to eminence, would be nine times greater, than that of his remaining in obscurity. And in like manner, we may reason concerning all other Astrological Aphorisms. But I believe that the probability of Predictions, founded on the Planetary configurations, being verified, will be greater even than what the result would be given, according to the Mathematical rules generally

used for calculating the probability of chances in any game, etc., for reasons which I shall now proceed to explain.

It is well known, that the motions of the Planets do not take place by accident, neither are they governed by mere chance; but they move by regular and determinate laws, impressed upon them by their Almighty Creator, and from which laws of motion they can never deviate; for although it is said in Astronomical language, that the Planets have irregularities in their motions, this ascribing of irregularity in the movements of the Planetary bodies, originated in the deficiency or inability of the Astronomers themselves, to construct perfect tables of the Planetary motions. The ancient Astronomers knew nothing of the perturbations of the Planets, and of some other important matters in the laws of the Planets' motions, which have been satisfactorily cleared up, and the proper equations determined, by modern discoveries, and which prove that in reality there is no such thing as irregularity in the motions of the Planets; for what were formerly called irregularities, are now proved to occur regularly, under the same circumstances and positions of the Planets, and therefore, there are no irregularities in the Planetary motions, but that they ever continue to move according to the laws impressed upon them by their Omnipotent Creator. This being satisfactorily proved, and admitting what is the fact, that the Astrological Aphorisms were originally framed on observations, that the various accidents of human life

happened at or near the times of some particular aspects or configurations of the Heavenly bodies, or upon calculations founded thereon. Here we see that although there may not exist any connexion between the events of human life, and of the positions of the Heavenly bodies, as of cause and effect, nevertheless, the various events having happened at or near the times of certain configurations. etc., and that many times similar events had been observed and noted, as occuring at the times of similar aspects, or configurations of the Planets, and as the Planetary movements and their configurations do not take place by chance, but according to regular and unalterable laws, impressed upon them at their creation, hence it follows, that the Predictions derived from such aspects and configurations, will have a much greater probability of being verified, than the result which would be given by the Mathematical rules of calculating the probabilities of chances; and, therefore, we need not be sceptical as to the possibility of Predicting events from the aspects and positions of the Planets, although there may not exist any planetary influence whatever.

REMARKS,

On the preceding New Theory of the Predictive Science.

It was at first the Author's intention in treating of this New Theory to have brought forward many other arguments in support of the views he has taken, but this would have occupied three or four chapters more

of this work, among others to have shewn at large, that the principles acted upon by the Actuaries at the different public offices for granting pensions, or annuities on the insurance of persons' lives, is in reality founded on the same basis as the doctrines of Astrology, viz. upon the results of repeated observations; therefore let no illiberal minded critic misconstrue what the Author has said about twenty persons being born under a certain Position of the Heavens; for many hundreds of instances have been recorded in past ages, and many thousands more might be collected, as having been verified in the present age, should any person be willing to incur the trouble and expense of applying to all the various students and Professors of the Celestial Sciences that are now to be found in all the various parts of this United Kingdom, and they might be tabulated in the same manner as has been done with the bills of mortality, at different places, by Mr. De Moivre, and by the Mathematicians, Simpson, Dr. Price, and others; but if the sceptics are so sceptical as not to be satisfied without this being done for them, why not let them be at the expense of appointing some person or persons to do it for them, but let them not misunderstand, nor cavil at what is said about the twenty persons born under a certain Position etc., of the Heavens, which is only mentioned by way of a popular illustration of the subject, and not with any intention of building a Theory on twenty instances when twenty thousand might be had for the purpose, were it not for the trouble and expense attendant thereon.

It was also the Author's intention to have introduced into his Essay several Algebraical Formulæ, from the very learned and elaborate works of the celebrated Count De La Place, Imperial Geometer of France, wherein La Place has shewn the application of the doctrine of probabilities to one of the most difficult and delicate species of calculations, viz., to rectifying the Astronomical observations taken by Astronomers during some ages past, and this he has done in so admirable a manner, as to determine what modern Astronomers denominate the long period of the Moon, comprehending a space of 180 years, with such accuracy as most satisfactorily to account for all the anomalies in the Moon's motions, even to the fraction of a second of the Moon's place in the heavens, as has since been proved by the most accurate actual observations of modern Astronomers. This wonderful task performed by Count De La Place by means of the Mathematical doctrine of probabilities, had before time completely baffled the united efforts and talents of the celebrated Dr. Halley, Sir Isaac Newton, Professor Machin, Dr. Bradley, Dr. Maskelyne, and all Royal Astronomers and Mathematicians in Europe, who had attempted the same by other processes and might perhaps for ever have remained undetermined, had not La Place hit upon the happy expedient of applying the doctrine of probabilities to the Lunar Theory. Now, let us ask the sceptics, seeing that the doctrine of probabilities has corrected the Astronomical observations on the Moon, which have been made during past ages, and has also determined her

actual place in the heavens to the fraction of a second; why may not the same doctrine be as successfully applied to determine the events of human life, where the calculations used are in most cases sufficiently correct for the purpose, if the result come within fifteen minutes or quarter of a degree? If there be any sceptics so sceptical as to doubt of the practicability and the success of the proposed application, we will make free to tell them that however important they may be in the their own estimation, that we shall consider their sarcasms and their impotent and illiberal efforts to decry a Science of which they are entirely ignorant, as being totally unworthy of our slightest attention, or briefest reply.

POSTSCRIPT.

Upper Beau Street, Everton, Liverpool.

12 JANUARY, 1830.

YESTERDAY evening, my friend Mr. Thomas Williams introduced to me at my house, an ingenious Gentleman and admirer of the Celestial Sciences, Mr. Stephen Carmichael, who shewed me some of Mr. Ranger's Planispheres, which I very carefully examined, and I found the curve of the Planisphere of the Zodiac to be a curve very different to mine, the Radius of the Generating Circle in Mr. Ranger's, being a quarter of an inch shorter than that of mine; but the extent of 23° 28' for the Sun's greatest declination upon Mr. Ranger's, is three tenths of an inch greater than in mine. I found Mr. R's Planispheres, that were shown to me, to be out of all mathematical proportion whatever, for neither the Sines, Co-sines, Secants, Co-secants, Tangents, nor Semi-tangents, on the latter of which the construction of Planispheres on correct principles must most chiefly depend; he had only one curve, viz. that for the Horizon, and Mr. Carmichael stated to me, that he projected the Poles of the other Houses of the Celestial Figure, also the Poles of the Planets by straight lines, or by the same curve that he uses to describe the line of the Horizon with !! and added, that Mr. Ranger's Planispheres would give the Arc of Direction within about half a degree of the truth !!! And to get the different proportions of the Aspects and Arcs of Directions, he uses a Brass Triangle very nearly in the shape of the Roman Capital A, divided at the base into thirty parts or degrees, with a string stretched tight and reaching the whole extent of the Triangle, which is about a foot in length, which is moved backwards or forwards to measure the distances, In short,

Mr. Ranger's Planispheres bear but a very slight resemblance to mine, and however pretty they may look to the eye, they are miserably deficient in the main point, Mathematical correctness. How should it be otherwise?

I have shewn in the foregoing work, that neither one, two, nor three curves could answer the purpose. Every proportion and every direction is got directly from my Planispheres themselves; they do not stand in need of a Brass Triangle to help them out; any man, versed in the Mathematics, would see the difference in a moment.

THOMAS OXLEY.

THE

CELESTIAL PLANISPHERES,

PART IV.

(Which is added by particular desire.)

Containing choice Astrological Aphorisms from Ptolemy, also the Significations of the different Positions of the Planets, and of Directions from the celebrated W. Lilly; so that a purchaser of these

"CELESTIAL PLANISPHERES,"

will be enabled hereby, both to calculate, and to give a correct judgment on any Nativity, without the help of any other book. To which is prefixed an Original Introduction, with New and Correct Rules, for Rectifying Nativities by accidents, never before published, also interesting remarks and calculations on the Nativity of

HIS MAJESTY,

KING WILLIAM THE FOURTH,

ETC. ETC.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

THE addition of this fourth part, as every intelligent reader must be well aware, has greatly added to the expense of printing this work: but, notwithstanding so great an increase to the vast expenses already incurred, no additional charge has been made to the purchasers, this work being sold at the same price, as though it had consisted only of the three * parts originally contained in the Manuscript, which was submitted to the inspection and approbation of the Author's Scientific Friends and Subscribers, as it was his intention from the commencement, that this work should have been entirely Astronomical and Mathematical. He has since been induced thus to sacrifice his own pecuniary interests to oblige a number of his highly respectable Subscribers, who represented to him that the addition of a compendium of Astrology, would render this work a complete *Multum in Parvo*. He further considered that some persons purchasing this work, might not be in possession of any Astrological Books, nor wish to purchase them, and that a compendium of the Astral Science would be quite sufficient for them: therefore, the Author of the Celestial Planispheres, does not offer the Fourth Part of this Book as a complete System of Astrology; but only as a selection from the best Authors on that Science; of the most useful and most valuable Aphorisms for giving judgment on Nativities; extracted principally from the Christian Astrology of the celebrated William Lilly, and from the Quadrapartile of Claudius Ptolemy, these works being very ancient, the language is also antiquated, and some of the expressions extremely curious and very different from the modern style of writing, as the intelligent and candid reader will naturally expect.

* At first when the Author proposed publishing the Celestial Planispheres, he only engaged to publish the substance of what is contained in the second part of this book, shewing how to introduce the Planets into the Genethlical Planispheres, and to calculate the Arcs of Directions thereby, and that there should only have been five Plates given with the work, viz. those which are now numbered, Plates No. 3, 6, 7, 8, and 10, he has since doubled the number of Plates, in order to illustrate the three parts of the book superadded.

But for the satisfaction of such of his readers as may be desirous of possessing complete Systems of Astrology, a list of books on that Science is given at the end of this volume, with the Publishers' names, and the prices of such as could be ascertained. While on this subject it may be necessary to mention that Astrology is an innocent, delightful, and sublime study, and as different from Magic as light is from darkness: this remark is added by way of caution, because it is with deep regret we have observed, that two or three of our modern Authors have very improperly introduced some scraps of Magic into their books, which may cause some superficial and bigotted readers as improperly to conclude that Magic and Astrology are one and the same Science, whereas they are really as different as possible.

The Rectification of Nativities, by the Celestial Planispheres.

Owing to the uncertainty of clocks and watches, together with the negligence of the Midwives, or Accoucheurs in noting down the times of birth, it very seldom happens that the times given to the Artists are the true times of the Nativities; it is in consequence of this inaccuracy, that the Professors of Astrology have invented various rules for discovering the true times of Nativities from the given times, such as the Animodar of Ptolemy, the Trutine of Hermes, the Rectification of the Angles of the Figure by the Mundane Parallels of the Planets, etc., and the Rectification by Accidents. In regard to the three first named methods, very little dependence can be placed on them, as they sometimes bring the time nearer the correct time; but in many instances they give the time farther from the truth even than the estimate time itself is; and as to rectifying the Angles of the Figure by bringing them to the same degree and minute as the Sun and Moon, that is, by placing the Sun or Moon on the cusp of one of the three prime Angles, viz., the first, the tenth, or the seventh House, or by bringing the Sun and Moon to the Mundane Parallels of these Angles; or, by bringing the two malevolent Planets Saturn or Mars to the cusps, or to the Mundane Parallels of the same. This rule of Rectification involves in it so great a degree of absurdity, that I have really been surprised that it should ever have been invented; or after it had been invented, that any person could be found so inconsiderate as to make use of it. It is even contrary to Astrology itself; because, according to the prin-

ciples of Astrology, persons born under similar Positions of the Heavens scarcely ever live to years of maturity, and this by my own observation, I know to be true, for out of a considerable number of Nativities which I have seen having similar configurations, I do not recollect that more than two or three lived to full age; for such Positions have in them so much of the nature of violence, as generally to destroy life in infancy: but should they live to years of maturity, (which as above mentioned very rarely happens) then would their whole lives be little better than continued scenes of trouble, vexation, and misery, brought on in a great measure by the perverseness and obstinacy of their own disposition*. So that we must regard it as a great mercy of Divine Providence, that such persons do most generally die in their infancy, and are thereby transferred from a life of trouble and misfortune, to a world of bliss.

Secondly, agreeably to reason, truth, and observation, persons are born at every moment during the natural day of 24 hours, and consequently under every possible Position of the Heavens; but the absurd rule of which I am speaking would not allow of this; for Example, if ten persons were born in the same town, and successively within the space of two hours from first to last, and consequently, the Figures of their Nativities very widely different, yet according to the Rectification by Mundane Parallels, the Artist would be constrained to alter the given times of their births, and to assign only one Figure of the Heavens for the whole of the ten!! And therefore, I leave it to every candid and philosophical mind, and to every enlightened student in the Celestial Sciences, to consider how excessively irrational such a mode of Rectification must be! In fact there is only one method of Rectification which can always be depended on, and that is the Rectification by Accidents, and therefore this is the only method I shall here exemplify.

The Rectification of Nativities by Accidents.

First note down the times of three or four remarkable accidents or events, which have happened to the Native, and find by the Planispheres, or by the Ephemeris, what the true

* A remarkable verification of these remarks, is found in the Nativity of a person now living who was Born 14th February, 1781, at 44 minutes past 2 o'clock in the Morning, where the Ascendant is afflicted with a Mundane Parallel of the two malevolents Saturn and Mars!

solar arc* of Direction will be, corresponding to so many years and months of the Native's age; for each and for every accident given, placing the true arc in each case in a line with its corresponding accident or event.

In this mode of rectification the Ascendant is generally directed for the accidents of the body, such as sickness, broken limbs, etc.; the Mid-Heaven is directed to the conjunction or other aspects of the Sun, or Moon, or to those of the fortunate Planets, Jupiter and Venus, or even to the aspects of the Lord of the Tenth, for honors, dignities, and promotions in life, for the setting up in business, etc. Sometimes the Sun or Moon, or whatever Planet happens to be the Apheta or Hyleg, is directed to the Semi-quartile, the Quartile, the Sesquiquadrate, or the opposition of other Planets for sicknesses and other accidents of the body; but this last named method of directing the Apheta is generally attended with a great deal of trouble, because the Arcs of Direction will be varied, or increased or decreased according as the Polar elevation of the Hyleg is increased or decreased: and for one nativity it will sometimes require that the Figure be erected for five or six different times and sometimes more, and the Arcs of Direction calculated for each time, and the results compared together, still altering the time, and calculating again until a time be found which will bring out the Arc of Direction for the accident or event which shall be the same as the Solar Arc required. About nineteen or twenty years ago, I tried many experiments on this and other methods of correcting the Polar elevation of the Apheta, and have discovered a method which saves the trouble of the five or six erections of the Figure, etc., and generally determines the polar elevation of the Apheta, which is required to give the true Arc of Direction sought, by only erecting one, or at most two figures besides that for the estimate time; but in most cases I have succeeded by erecting one additional figure only besides that for the estimate time. The rule is this; having erected the figure according to the estimate time, and having determined the Planet's Right Ascensions and Polar Elevations, etc., calculate the Apheta's Arc of Direction to

*See pages 60, 61, 111, 112, 113, 114 and 115 of this book, where the method of equating, or finding the true Arcs according to the Placidian principles, is so amply illustrated that it is not necessary to give any instruction on that subject in this part of the book, and that nothing might be wanting to gratify the wishes of every student and admirer of these Sublime Sciences, in addition to the Placidian scale of years upon the Planisphere of the Zodiac, the author has also engraved another, adapted to Naibod's Measure of Time, and has extended it to 100 years.

the aspect of any Planet which would give an accident of a similar nature with that noted down, and observe that the Arc of Direction may come out one, two, or three degrees, etc., more or less than the proper Solar Arc; next erect another figure, for four minutes, or eight minutes, or twelve minutes either sooner or later than the estimate time, and having determined again the Polar elevation of the Apheta to this second figure, calculate the aforesaid Direction over again, and observe the difference between the first and the second Arc of Direction, and also the difference between the estimate time and the assumed time; then by the process of Algebraic Equations, you may determine immediately the time which will give the true Arc of Direction, which is therefore the true time of Birth. This rule is also equally applicable to obtaining the true time of Birth by the various Mundane Directions, Mundane Parallels, etc., when the accidents correspond in nature with these Mundane Directions, or the same may be easily performed by the following Arithmetical Rule, which I have divested of all difficulty. It is taken from my own Manuscript Copy, written for publication about 14 years ago, after having had it in use, and proved its correctness for upwards of five years upon a number of Nativities which came under my own observation, and which in most instances produced a rectification by altering the time one, two, three, four, five, or six minutes only. But if the rules of Rectification by the Trutine of Hermes, by Mundane Parallels, etc., as commonly practised by Astrologers, had been used, the Time would have been altered half an hour, or even an hour or more!

THE RULE.

Accidents being given to correct the estimate time by, select one of the principal directions corresponding to a remarkable accident, calculate the same, and observe whether the Arc of Direction comes out greater or less than the Solar Measure, The difference is the first error.

Let the Promittor's distance from a given House, or Angle in the estimate figure, be called the first Position.

Make the Right Ascension of the M. Celie one degree greater or one degree less than that of the estimate figure of Birth, to which find the primary distance, etc., of the Promittor, and call this the second position. Then calculate the given direction to this second position, observe whether the Arc comes out greater or less than the Solar Measure, and the difference is the second error.

Then opposite to the Promittor's Primary distance belonging to the first position, place the error of the second position.

Opposite the Promittor's Primary Distance of the second position, place the error which belongs to the first position.

Thirdly. Let the numbers of the distances, etc., of degrees and minutes, be all reduced into minutes of a degree, so that all may be integer numbers. Then, for the products multiply the positions by the errors which stand opposite to them.

If the errors be of the same kind, that is, if both the Arcs of Direction are greater or both of them less than the Solar Measure, take the difference of the two errors for a divisor, and the difference of the products for a dividend.

But if the errors are unlike, namely, one Arc of Direction greater, and the other Arc of Direction less than the Solar Measure, then take the sum of the two errors for a divisor, and the sum of the products for a dividend, the quotient will be the Promittor's rectified distance (from the given House or Angle) expressed in minutes of a degree. And this rectified distance being known, so likewise is the true time of Birth by comparing the distance in the estimate time with the rectified distance, allowing 15 degrees for one hour, and for every single degree reckon four minutes of time, etc.

EXAMPLE

Of Rectification by Accidents.

Mr. Worsdale states, that the estimate time of Napoleon's Birth as given by the Emperor himself to an Astronomer in Corsica, was 15th August 1769, at a quarter before 10 o'clock in the forenoon, or reckoning the time astronomically it was 14th August, at 21 hours 45 minutes post meridian, in latitude 41° 40' North, and longitude 9° East from London, at which time the Sun was in ♌ 22° 43'

and his Right Asc.	145 4
Right Asc. of time 21h. 45m.	326 15
Sum	471 19
Reject the Circle	360 00
Remains R. A. of Mid Heaven	111 19

The most eminent event in Napoleon's life was being crowned Emperor of France at 34 years and 5 months of his age, the Solar Arc corresponding to this age is 32° 5', and the Sun being the grand Astrological Significator of honor, dignity, and glory, therefore the Mid Heaven directed to the body of the Sun, will point out the time of his being crowned Emperor, etc.

From the Rt. Asc. of Sun	145° 4'
Subt. Rt. Asc. of Mid Heaven	111 19
Mid Heaven ☌ ☉ Arc	33 45
But the true Solar Arc is for the time he was crowned, etc.	32 5
The difference is	1 40

The difference is in excess of the proper Solar Arc, and 1° 40' answers to 6 m. and 40 seconds of time, which added to the estimate time 21 h. 45 m. gives 21 h. 51 m. 40 seconds for the rectified time of Birth.

To perform this by the Planispheres, from the Mid Heaven upon the Sun's parallel of declination mark the afordsaid Solar Arc 32° 5', then take the Planisphere of the Zodiac, and slide it (upon the Planisphere of the Nativity) until the Sun's centre, viz. ♌ 22°¾ comes exactly to this mark, while thus fixed draw the line of the Zodiac as already taught in pages 86 and 87 of the book, etc.

Equation of Time.

As it is absolutely necessary that all Celestial Figures of Nativities, etc. be erected to true Solar time. It may be well to shew how to reduce Clock time to Solar time.

RULE I.

When the clock is faster than the Sun, subtract the Equation of time from the clock time, and the remainder will be the true Solar time required. But when the clock is slower than the Sun, add the Equation of time to the clock time, the sum will be the true Solar time.

RULE II.

To reduce Solar time, or Apparent time, to Mean or Clock time.

When the clock is faster than the Sun, add the Equation of time to the Solar time, the sum is the clock time or mean time required.

When the clock is slower than the Sun, subtract the Equation of time from the Solar time, the remainder is the clock time, or mean time required.

The Equation of time is given for every day in the year in White's Ephemeris, and in most Almanacs. The second table in Ferguson's Astronomy by Dr. Brewster, is one of the very best that I have seen for this purpose.

By neglecting to reduce the clock time to Solar time would sometimes cause an error of so much as four degrees or more in the Right Ascension of the Mid Heaven, and also make the whole Figure of the Heavens equally erroneous.

Observe, that the clock time here mentioned, is that shown by a clock which should have been set to mean time and continue to keep it truly for a whole year together. Such are the clocks made use of in the Astronomical Observatories, and also the Chronometers used for finding the longitude of ships at sea. But if your clock be set every day at noon, or even every second or third day at noon by a Sun-dial, then will the said clock shew Solar time. It may be well to remark, that neglecting the Equation of time in calculating the Moon's zodiacal place from an Ephemeris, etc., will sometimes cause an error of 8' or 10' in her longitude, etc.

Of the Difference of Meridians.

Our Astronomical tables and our almanacs being calculated for the Meridian of Greenwich, (near) London, it is necessary in erecting Figures of Nativities, and in making other Astronomical calculations in places which are East or West from Greenwich, that we should know what the corresponding time then is at Greenwich (et vice versa;) the difference of Longitude between any two places being turned into time, at the rate of 15°, etc., to an hour.

PROBLEM I.

The Time at Greenwich being given, to find the Time at any other place.

If the time at any place in East Longitude be required, to the difference of the Meridians, add the given time at Greenwich, the sum is the time required at the other place. But if the place be in West Longitude, subtract the difference of Meridians from the time at Greenwich, the remainder is the time required.

PROBLEM II.

The Time at any place (whose Longitude is known,) being given, to find what the Time is at Greenwich.

If the place be in East Longitude, subtract the difference of Meridians from the given time, the remainder is the time at Greenwich; but if the place be in the West Longitude, add the difference of Meridians to the given time, the sum is the time at Greenwich.

Observe, that tables of the Longitudes of places are to be found in every book of Navigation, and of Astronomy, and almost in every Geography.

OBSERVATIONS,

On the Placidian Principles of Direction.

In the foregoing part of this book, the examples in Directional Motion, are calculated according to the principles of Placidus, who directs that the angles of the first and tenth, should be directed to the Aspects of the Planets, by Mundane Motion only, not to the Zodiacal Aspects of the Planets. Now let us ask those who are deeply versed in these matters; since we see that the Sun and Moon are directed to the Aspects of other Planets both in the Zodiac, and in Mundo, would it not be equally rational to direct the Ascendant and tenth House, to the Aspects of the Planets, both in the Zodiac and in Mundo?

I believe many examples might be given, of the propriety of directing the Ascendant and tenth House, in both the ways here mentioned. And what can be more to the purpose, than an example from the Nativity of an illustrious personage now living, that of his present Majesty, King William IV. According to Raphael's Astrologer of the nineteenth century, the time is 21st August, 1765, at 54 minutes past 3 o'clock, in the Morning, and R. A. of the M. Celie, 29° 15′, and upon the Ascendant, ♌ 17° 28′. Saturn is in ♊ 4° 48′, and therefore the Zodiacal □ of ♄, falls in ♍, 4° 48. If we direct the Ascendant to ♍ 4° 48′, Saturns □ in the Zodiac, the Arc of Direction, is about 25°, which answers exactly to 27 years and 5 months, his Majesty's age at the time he had the misfortune to break his left arm, on the 21st January, 1793. But if we direct the Ascendant to the Quartile of Saturn, by Mundane Motion, according to Placidus, that is by directing the Mid-heaven to the body of Saturn, the Arc of Direction will be 33°¾, which by the Placidian scale answers to the 37th year of the Native's age, and consequently does not correspond with the time of that accident, but may probably point out some other, which properly belongs to the tenth House.

Again, the rigid Ptolemeans and Placidians, will only direct ♀ and ☽ for marriage in men's Nativities; but according to common Astrology, the good directions of the Ascendant, or Lord of the Ascendant, to the Lord of the seventh, will have signification of marriage both in men's and in women's Nativities. In his Majesty's Nativity, Saturn is Lord of the seventh, and the Sun is Lord of the Ascendant, accordingly the Sun to the Trine of Saturn in the Zodiac, the Arc of Direction is about 48°, and answers as nearly as can be desired, to the time of his marriage at 52 years, 11 months, the Solar Arc for the same being 48°¼ nearly; the Ascendant ☌ of ♀, Arc 44°, which answers to 48½ years, this latter direction would influence the Native's inclinations towards the event pointed out by ☉ △ ♄. Although I have calculated more than forty directions in this Nativity, I have not yet found one of ♀ or ☽, that answers to the time like that of the Lord of the Ascendant, to the Trine of the Lord of the seventh. The Mid-heaven to the Mundane Trine of the ☽, Arc of Direction 60° 2-3rds = 66 years, will no doubt be found to correspond within a few months, of his Majesty's coronation, making allowance for the anticipating and retarding of directions, mentioned in page 122, of this work; for in the significations of directions, the M. Celie △ ☽, shews honor, fame, and preferment in life. And we may here remark, that this being a Nocturnal Geniture, and the Moon

having dignities in the tenth, and being moreover the conditionary luminary of the night, her Trine to the Mid-heaven points out an increase of honor and dignity as naturally in this Nocturnal Geniture, as would the direction of the Mid-heaven to the conjunction, Sextile or Quintile, etc. of the Sun in a Diurnal Nativity. This eminent direction of the Mid-heaven to △ ☽, is followed very closely by three other eminently good directions, viz. Asct. ✶, ♃, (Mundo) Arc, 62° 2-3rds. the Sun to his own Sextile in Mundo, by Converse Motion, Arc 62° 2-3rds. and Mid-heaven Quintile ♀ Arc 63°, there appears to be something very extraordinary in these three directions coming so nearly together, at about 63½ years of the Native's age, and probably may indicate a pleasant and prosperous time, both to the Sovereign and to the Nation, ♃ being Lord of the fifth House, her Majesty the Queen, may bless the Nation by presenting them with an heir to the throne, etc.

There is also a direction of an unpleasant nature operating not far from the present time, viz. Asct. S□ ♂ Arc 60°, and which answers to 65¼ years nearly. But as the benevolent directions are more numerous than the malevolent, there are strong scientific reasons to conclude, that the good directions will prevail, and that the S□ ♂, to the Ascendant, will pass over without injury to the Native, as I believe it will; and therefore let us all hope and pray, that his Majesty who has already shewn himself the friend of liberal institutious, and the Protector of Civil and Religious Liberty, may yet live many years in health, and in the enjoyment of domestic felicity, and in promoting the prosperity and happiness of all classes of his subjects.

In concluding this Introduction, I will now add a few words of friendly advice to the Students and Professors of the Astral Sciences, that they may

Avoid giving Rash and Inconsiderate Judgments on Nativities.

If you meet with a Nativity, in which there is the Quartile or Opposition of either of the Luminaries to Saturn or Mars, do not be rash in giving your judgment on the same, because that you may find one or two malevolent Aspects, do not

thence hastily conclude that the Native will die a Violent Death; for recollect, that the same Aspects do also signify a severe illness or fever; but duly take into consideration the good Aspects, the Sextiles, Quintiles, the Trines and Biquintiles found in the Nativity, and also the good Positions of the Benefics ♃ and ♀; observe, whether ♃ or ♀ be present in the Ascendant, or, in the Tenth House, or in any good Aspects thereunto, carefully consider the good as well as the evil Aspects and Positions. It is for want of thus duly considering both sides of the Predictive Speculum of human life, that many Artists or Professors have by their hasty judgment given rise to unfounded apprehensions and groundless alarm in weak minds, whereupon many illiberal, ignorant, and inconsiderate persons have taken the opportunity to censure and disparage this Sublime Science, when the Artist, or Professor only ought to be blamed: I do therefore most earnestly request every Student and Professor of the Predictive Science, not to overlook or neglect, but first carefully to consider all the good, as well as evil Aspects and Positions previous to giving judgment on any Nativity.

A TABLE,

For converting Hours, and Minutes of Hours, into Degrees and Minutes of the Equator, and the contrary.

Time.	Deg.	Time.	Deg.	Time.	Deg.	Time.	Deg.
Hour	o	Min.	o '	Min.	o '	Sec.	o '
1	15	1	0 15	31	7 45	4	0 1
2	30	2	0 30	32	8 0	8	0 2
3	45	3	0 45	33	8 15	12	0 3
4	60	4	1 0	34	8 30	16	0 4
5	75	5	1 15	35	8 45	20	0 5
6	90	6	1 30	36	9 0	24	0 6
7	105	7	1 45	37	9 15	28	0 7
8	120	8	2 0	38	9 30	32	0 8
9	135	9	2 15	39	9 45	36	0 9
10	150	10	2 30	40	10 0	40	0 10
11	165	11	2 45	41	10 15	44	0 11
12	180	12	3 0	42	10 30	48	0 12
13	195	13	3 15	43	10 45	52	0 13
14	210	14	3 30	44	11 0	56	0 14
15	225	15	3 45	45	11 15	60	0 15
16	240	16	4 0	46	11 30		
17	255	17	4 15	47	11 45		
18	270	18	4 30	48	12 0		
19	285	19	4 45	49	12 15		
20	300	20	5 0	50	12 30		
21	315	21	5 15	51	12 45		
22	330	22	5 30	52	13 0		
23	345	23	5 45	53	13 15		
24	360	24	6 0	54	13 30		
		25	6 15	55	13 45		
		26	6 30	56	14 0		
		27	6 45	57	14 15		
		28	7 0	58	14 30		
		29	7 15	59	14 45		
		30	7 30	60	15 0		

This Table will be found of great use in a variety of Astronomical calculations, particularly in erecting Figures of the Heavens for Nativities, and for other purposes, etc. The manner of using this Table is so obvious, as to need no explanation; see its use exemplified in page, 86.

Compendium of Astrology:

COMPRISING

THE ESSENCE OF THE SCIENCE,

To be found only in scarce and voluminous works, and which the Student cannot procure but at a very high price.

SEVEN Planets move constantly in these twelve signs; their names, characters, and qualities, are thus distinguished.

♄	Saturn	Cold and dry
♃	Jupiter	Hot and moist
♂	Mars	Hot and dry
☉	Sol (the Sun) . .	Hot and dry
♀	Venus	Cold and moist
☿	Mercury . . .	Convertible, variable
☽	Luna (the Moon).	Cold and moist

The twelve signs of the Zodiac are divided into triplicities, according to the four elements, fiery, airy, earthy, and watery.

Fiery	Signs are	♈ ♌ ♐
Airy		♊ ♎ ♒
Earthy		♉ ♍ ♑
Watery		♋ ♏ ♓

Fiery signs are said to be in nature hot and dry; airy signs hot, and moist; earthy signs, cold and dry; and watery signs, cold and moist.

They are also divided into moveable, fixed, and common signs, as,

♈ ♋ ♎ ♑	moveable
♉ ♌ ♏ ♒	fixed
♊ ♍ ♐ ♓	common

With relation to their fixed, common, or moveable qualities, they behold each other with a □.

♈ ♊ ♌ ♎ ♐ ♒ masculine
♉ ♋ ♍ ♏ ♑ ♓ feminine
♋ ♌ ♍ ♎ ♏ ♐ signs of right ascension
♑ ♒ ♓ ♈ ♉ ♊ signs of oblique ascension
♊ ♓ and the beginning of ♐ are doubled bodied signs
♋ ♍ ♓ fruitful signs
♊ ♌ ♏ barren signs

They are divided into four parts, answerable to the four quarters of the year.

Vernal ♈ ♉ ♊ to the spring quarter, hot and moist—sanguine.

Æstival ♋ ♌ ♍ to the summer quarter, hot and dry—choleric.

Autumn ♎ ♏ ♐ to the harvest quarter, cold and dry—melancholy.

Winter ♑ ♒ ♓ the winter quarter, cold and moist—phlegmatic.

The signs are also termed,

Mute ♋ ♏ ♓
Humane ♊ ♍ ♒

It should be observed that a planet in ♈ casts his dexter ✱ to ♒, and sinister ✱ to ♋; his □ dexter to ♑, □ sinister to ♋; △ dexter to ♐, △ sinister to ♌, and his ☍ to ♎; and so of the rest.

The Signification of the Twelve Houses of Heaven.

The First House, or Angle, is called the east angle ascendant; or properly, in nativities, the horoscope, in the hour of birth; and signifies the life, complexion, will, manners, and understanding; of the native it signifies the head and face.

The Second House signifies the estate, fortune, property and riches of the native. Also gain, gold, silver, and all moveable goods without life. It is a succedent house.

The Third House signifies brethren, sisters, kindred, short journies and voyages. It is a cadent house.

The Fourth House signifies fathers, houses, lands, immoveable property, orchards, tillage, hidden treasures, or things under the earth; prison, the grave, obscure places, and desolate; finally, the good report after this life, and the period of all human affairs.

The Fifth House signifies kindred, joy, pleasure, gifts, delights, bravery, the riches of the father. All profit, by the fourth house, playing, gaming, drinking and debauchery, is a succedent house.

The Sixth House signifies servants, sickness, all cattle unfit for labour, as sheep, dogs, hogs, fowls, and wild beasts; also hunters, gaolers, prisons, false accusations. Deseases of the native, or sickness, signifies uncles, aunts, or the father's brother's sister, one's steward, tenants, and, in a word, all small cattle and birds.

The Seventh House denotes marriage, wives, law-suits, contentions, controversies, and quarrels, common persons, and all the men we deal with, &c., and this is the west angle. In law-suits it is the defendant; in war, enemies: and indeed all kind of opposition; also thefts, thieves, robbers, &c.

The Eighth House signifies death, sadness; riches unthought of, as legacies, dowries, the estate or property of those we deal with in trade, or partners, and all the benefit of the seventh house. It is a succedent house.

The Ninth House signifies religion, long journies, and voyages, ceremonies, faith, the great arcana of nature, all arts and sciences, the law, clergyman navigation, kindred of the wife, church livings, transmutation of metals, metaphysics. It is a cadent or falling house.

The Tenth House is the *Medium Cœli;* it is the south angle or mid-heaven, signifying kings, nobles, judges, princes, governors, magistrates; denotes honor, advancement, dignities, perferment, public offices, trade and mercantile employ, commanders, the mother of the native, and all benefit of the ninth house: also the father of the wife; being the fourth from the seventh.

The Eleventh House signifies friends and acquaintances, hope, the things we wish and desire, companions, the advice of friends, their council, their falseness or fidelity, all the profit of the tenth house. It is a succedent house. It signifies praise or dispraise of any person; it shews the support and aid of those in power; as to kings, their strength, warlike force, and treasure.

The Twelfth House signifies secret or private enemies, prisons, captivity, slavery, or bondage, evil spirits, torments, treasons, villainy; all great cattle, fit for labor, as horses, oxen, &c. it is a cadent, falling house. It denotes also suicide, trouble of mind, tribulation of all sorts, and all the misfortunes of mankind.

Of the Quarters of Heaven signified by the Twelve Houses.

♈	East	First	is	East
♉	S. by E.	Second	—	N. E. by E.
♊	W. & by S.	Third	—	N. N. E.
♋	North.	Fourth	—	North.
♌	E. & by N.	Fifth	—	N. W. by W.
♍	S. & by W.	Sixth	—	W. N. W.
♎	West.	Seventh	—	West.
♏	N. & by E.	Eighth	—	S. W. by S.
♐	E. & by S.	Ninth	—	S. S. W.
♑	South.	Tenth	—	South
♒	W. & by N.	Eleventh	—	S. E. by E.
♓	N. & by W.	Twelfth	—	S. S. E.

Before any judgment can be given on a nativity, it is requisite to be known, whether the Native is of a long or short life, I have therefore selected the following general rules.

Signs of Death in Infancy.

1. If the birth be precisely on a New or full Moon.
2. If the Moon be in conjunction of Saturn and Mars, in the 6th. 8th. or 12th. House of the Figure, or in ☌.
3. If the Moon be in quartile or opposition of Saturn or Mars in the 4th. House.
4. If the Moon be besieged by the Sun and Mars.
5. If an Eclipse impede the Light of Time in the hour of birth.
6. If all the Planets be subterranean, and neither the Sun, Moon, nor Lord of the Ascendant essentially fortified.
7. If the two Malefics are conjoined in the Ascendant.
8. If an Infortune in the Ascendant vitiate the degrees thereof, or by quartile or oppositions.
9. If the Lord of the Ascendant be combust of the Sun, and at the same time Cadent and Retrograde.
10. If the Dragon's Head or Tail be in conjunction of Saturn or Mars in the 4th.

These configurations. by long and invariable experience, are found to destroy Life in Infancy, except the benefic rays of Jupiter or Venus interpose, and by joining in the aspects, modify and remit their malignant effect.

Observe that Mars hath greater power of destroying life when posited in Aries and above the Earth, in a diurnal Nativity; and Saturn, when posited in Capricorn and above the Earth, in a nocturnal Nativity.

Signs of Short Life.

If the degree Ascending Sol or Luna are extremely afflicted, or either of them, it is an argument of short life, and therefore it will be in vain to form long directions for such a nativity. These points are said to be afflicted or unfortunate, when either the conjunction, quartile or opposition of the Infortunes vitiate their places, or when many violent fixed Stars of the nature of the Lord of the 8th, ascend with the degree ascending, or with the Luminaries.

The Moon besieged between Saturn and Mars, argues Short Life.

Signs of Long Life.

If the Lord of the Ascendant be essentially strong, free from the affliction of the Infortunes, not combust, nor retrogade, nor impeded by the Lord of the 4th, 6th, 8th, or 12th, Houses, but increasing in number, light, and motion, it shews Long Life.

If the Sun in a Birth by day, or the Moon in a Birth by night, be strong, free from affliction, and assisted by the Fortunes, it shews Long Life.

Signs of a Violent Death.

You must first consider the Sun and Moon, secondly, Saturn and Mars, ann their signs, which are called violent, viz. Aries, Scorpio, Capricorn, Aquarius, Libra, wherein Saturn hath more signification unto Death, Mars to the kind thereof; thirdly, the 8th. House and Lord thereof; fourthly, the Lord of the Ascendant; fifthly, the fixed Stars of the nature of Saturn and Mars, the principal whereof are Caput Algol in 23. 27' Taurus, Oculus Taurus in 5. 43' Gemini, Hercules 20. 30' Cancer, Right Shoulder of Orion in 25. 59' Gemini, Cor Scorpio in 6. 15' Sagitarius, Chælæ in 11. 15' Scorpio.

First, both the Luminaries in violent Signs, not both in one Sign, but in divers which behold not one another, portend a violent Death.

The Lights are said to be in contiguous Signs, when the Moon is in Aries, and the Sun in Taurus, or the Moon in Aquarius, and the Sun in Capricorn, and so in the others.

Both the Luminaries with violent fixed Stars, and within the distance of five degrees, threaten a violent Death; the Moon with Cor Scorpio, and the Sun with Oculus Taurus, without doubt declare a violent Death; and then most certainly when the Lord of the Ascendant and of the Eighth, is in conjunction with either of the Lights.

These Rules then hold good, and take effect, when the Lord of the Ascendant or of the Eighth House, is in conjunction with one of the Lights; or when either the Sun or Moon have dominion in the first or eighth House.

If either the Sun or Moon be in violent Signs, and the other of the Lights with a violent fixed Star, it prenotes a violent Death: but in this case it is necessary, that together with this configuration, one of the Infortunes afflict either Sun or Moon, or the Lord of the eighth.

Secondly, both the Luminaries unfortunated by Saturn and Mars, so that one of the lights, and one of the Infortunes be in a violent Sign, or with a fixed Star, portend a violent Death.

If both the Luminaries be afflicted only of one of the Infortunes, the other Infortune being impedited or posited in a violent Sign, and having dignities in the eighth, it threatens violent Death.

The Conjunction of Saturn and Mars in an angle, especially in the Mid-heaven in a violent Sign, infesting only one of the Lights, threatens a violent Death.

The Conjunction, Quartile Opposition, or mutual aspect of the Infortunes in other Signs as well as in the violent, both in Angles, one of them challenging power in the eighth, portend a violent Death.

A malevolent Planet in the eighth, and the Lord of the eighth afflicted of an unfortunate Planet by nature, who is in a violent Sign, both the Lights or either of them afflicted in a violent Sign, portends violent Death.

The Lord of the eighth in the Ascendant, and in his detriment or fall, or in a violent Sign, or with a violent fixed Star, and one of the Lights infested of either of the malignant Planets denotes a violent Death.

The Lord of the eighth in his detriment or fall, afflicted by one of the Infortunes, and together with this, either of the Luminaries, or the other Infortune in a violent Sign, demonstrate violent Death.

The Lord of the first in a violent Sign, or infested of the malevolents, and the dispositor of the Light of Time being also in a violent Sign and afflicted, portends violent Death.

The Lord of the first in the eighth, being naturally an Infortune and afflicted besides, &c. shews a violent Death. But if he be not naturally a malevolent Planet; but is in a violent Sign, and impedited by the Quartile or Opposition of the Malefics, it portends the same.

The Lords of the eighth and first House, being the dispositors of either Light, and either of them in detriment and fall, and one of the Infortunes afflicting the other Light in a violent Sign, these shew a violent Death.

The Moon in the 7th, in Signs where fixed Stars of a violent nature are placed, viz. Taurus Gemini Cancer Sagittarius, and in Quartile or Opposition of Sun, or an evil Planet posited in the eighth, or having dominion therein, and both being in Signs violent, these are arguments of a violent Death.

But notwithstanding all the precedent Rules are to be admitted, and you have a full signification of a violent Death, yet Lilly saith if one of the Fortunes be in the Ascendant and the other in the eighth, all fear of a sudden or violent Death is taken away.

The Manner or Kind of a Violent Death.

(From Lilly.)

The Signification hereof, is taken from that significator who doth most heavily afflict the significators of Death, or hath principal authority and force in the places of the significators of Death, viz. of the Luminaries, the Lord of the Ascendant, Lord of the eighth, or of these Houses, commixing with him the nature of the Sign, and sometimes of the House of Heaven in which he is posited.

Saturn properly according to his own nature, denotes Death by drowning, Shipwreck, ruin of old Buildings, and Poison.

Mars, by Fire, Iron, Thunder or Lightning, shot of Guns, stroke of Horses, both of them by some Fall from on high, or strangling.

Nature of the Signs in this Manner of Judgment.

Fiery Signs, Aries Leo Sagittarius, by Fire, Thunder, Lightning, Gun-shot.

Airy Signs, Gemini Libra Aquarius, Fall from on high, Beheading, Strangling, and Hanging

Watery Signs, Cancer Scorpio Pisces, Drowning.

Earthly Signs, Taurus Virgo Capricorn, by Rain, Cassuality or falls.

Human Signs, Gemini Libra Aquarius, denote Death by a Man, as by Arms or violence.

Nature of the Houses.

Tenth House, death by command of the Magistrate.

Twelfth, by Horses or great Cattle, or privy Murders.

Sixth, by Servants, Slaves or Neighbours.

When two, three or more testimonies concur, be more confident, as Mars author of Death, in a fiery Sign, the Death will be by Fire, Sword, &c.

But for the more perfect judging of the quality, and by what means a violent Death shall come, I have collected out of eminent Authors, together with my own judgment such Aphorisms, as they and myself have found true by experience.

Rules of Saturn and Mars.

Saturn in Pisces and the Moon in Virgo, or Saturn in a watery Sign, and the Moon in Opposition to him, shews the Native will die by Water, viz. be Drowned, or else die by Drinking too much Wine.

Saturn in Scorpio, in Conjunction with Mars, and the Moon in Virgo making application to them, declare the Native will be suffocated or drowned.

Saturn in the watery triplicity, and the Sun conjoined with him, either by Conjunction, Quartile, or Opposition, are great arguments of Drowning, more especially in the eighth.

Saturn in the seventh, in Opposition to the Sun, or Moon, shews death by Imprisonment, Sluttishness, Poison, Poverty, Fear, torments in a Dungeon, or by some violent Fall, or in exile, &c.

Saturn in the tenth House, in Opposition to the Light of Time, declares death by the Fall of Houses, but if a watery Sign be on the fourth, by Water.

Saturn and Mars in the Twelfth, imports death or danger by great Beasts.

Leo, or Sagittarius on the Cusp of the Twelfth; and a Planet unfortunate therein, signify the Native will receive a fall from an Horse and so die.

Saturn in Sagittarius in the eighth imports the same.

Saturn and Mars in the seventh in a common Sign, and the Moon in Opposition to them, declare death by a sudden fall.

Saturn in the seventh with the ☋, declares hanging.

Observe, a benevolent Planet mitigates these judgments.

Mars in the seventh in Aries, Leo, or Sagitarius, imports burning alive.

Mars in the seventh in feral Signs, such as Leo and the last past of Sagitarius, declares death by ruins, or fall of timber, or Houses, or from fall by Beasts, or Horses.

Mars in fiery Signs in Quartile to Saturn in Cancer, Scorpio, or Pisces, denotes death by scalding, or hot water.

In each of these significations, you must have one, or both of the Luminaries, in evil configuration, with him, or otherwise the judgment is but of small import.

Again, if the Lord of the Ascendant, or eighth be in opposition to the Ascendant, the Native will die violently.

If the Lord of the seventh, or eighth, be in the ninth in an earthy Sign, and unfortunate therein, the Native will die by some sudden misfortune.

If the Sun is joined to the Lord of the Ascendant in Leo, and Mars hath no dominion in the Ascendant, or any good Planet, posited in the eighth, the Native dies by Fire.

The same if the Sun be posited in the fourth, in a fiery Sign in conjunction with the Lord of the Ascendant, or eighth House, and afflicted of the Infortunes.

If the Lord of Death be joined by body to the significator of Life, or to the Lord of the Ascendant, or the Moon joined to the Sun in Leo, or Sagittarius, with Mars aspecting them; or the Sun or Moon joined with a fixed Star of the nature of Mars, the Native will be in danger of Death by Fire; if Saturn instead of Mars beholds the Luminaries, the Native will be suffocated with Smoke.

If the Lord of the Ascendant be unfortunated by the Sun, or Mars, and Lord of the eighth, it declares Death by Fire.

All these I have found verified in many Nativities; but when none of these testimonies occur, the Native will die a natural Death.

Signs of Riches and when.

If all the significators of substance, namely the Lord of the 2nd. Planet in the 2nd. if any, Jupiter, the ⊕, and its dispositor, be placed in angles, or the greater part of them, and be also essentially dignified, it is an argument the Native shall attain a very great Estate, have plenty of all things, and be necessitated in nothing; and the more testimonies you find of fortitudes or debilities, the more judgment must be given of greatness or weakness of the Estate of the Native.

If moderately fortified, the Native shall not exceed or want, or with Regulus, or Spica Virginis; or the Fortunes in good Houses of Heaven.

In this manner of judgment it is no matter whether the Significators of Wealth and Riches be Fortunes or Infortunes.

The Moon fortunate in the Ascendant gives wealth and estimation all the life long.

The Sun and Moon in △, Sun then in his exaltation, neither of them afflicted by Saturn, or Mars, gives ample testimonies of a large fortune.

The same if both the Luminaries are in △ to each other from masculine Signs, and both in △ to the ⊕ likewise.

Jupiter in the 2nd, and the Moon in the 1st, or Jupiter in the Ascendant in his own dignities, and the Moon in the 2nd, in her dignities, promise wealth.

The ⊕ conjoined with the ☌ or ♃, predicts an increase of wealth.

Saturn dignified in a diurnal geniture in the 8th, in good aspect with either of the Fortunes, gives an increase of substance by the death of relatives or friends.

So also if the Lord of the 8th, is fortunate in some of his essential dignities, and is placed in the 10th House, the Native will have good fortune, and acquire an estate by the deceased.

If the dispositor of the ⊕ is in the 8th, and the Lord of the Ascendant aspects him, wealth comes by deceased persons.

If Saturn is well posited, and essentially strong, and aspect the Ascendant with a △, the Native becomes rich by lands, orchards, fields and pastures.

If Saturn is Lord of the 4th House, or posited in the 4th House, either in his House or exaltation, and is direct, swift in motion, and in good aspect with the Fortunes, it foreshews the Native shall acquire an ample fortune by managing quarries and mines where metals, coals, stones, or mineral are to be obtained; the more potent he is, the more gain may be expected, and more evidently the effects will appear.

The Lord of the 4th House received by either of the Luminaries, or the Planet that disposeth of either of the Lights, with mutual reception, imports abundance of wealth, by means of mines, whether coal mines, quarries, lead mines, etc., iron mines, or the like.

Jupiter in the 4th, in Libra, promiseth the Native much wealth out of the bowels of the earth, by tin especially, and argues a good inheritance, or personal estate from the father, without doubt in this judgment, Saturn is most to be preferred when he happens to be in the 4th House, in Aquarius, and Jupiter shall then be in Libra.

Mars in the 4th, House in Leo, and the Sun in Aries, is absolutely very promising for the Native to deal in iron mines, silver mines, or gold mines.

For to be fortunate in coal mines, or lead ore, it is requisite that Saturn should be in an earthy Sign, in some good aspect with the Sun, Mars and ☿, and be either in the 4th, or having a good aspect to those Planets posited in the 4th.

The time when the Native may expect an increase of wealth or the goods of fortune, is best discovered by the significators, and ⊕, directed to benefic promittors, unto the ☌, ✶, or △ of the Lord of the 2nd, or dispositor of the ⊕, or Planet in the 2nd, and their several aspects; yet if any desire to know in a general way, let him consider in what quarter of Heaven he finds any of the aforesaid significators of riches,

as especially him that is most fortified; for if he, or they are placed, or the greater part of them between the Ascendant and 10th House, then the Native shall have an Estate, or augmentation of riches in his youth, if they are posited in the 9th, 8th, or 7th, in his manhood, or at those years when he is of full age, or from twenty-five, to thirty-five or forty; if if they are in the 6th, 5th, or 4th, then nearer to old age, or after forty, and before fifty-five; if they are in the 3rd, 2nd, or 1st, then towards the latter end.

In this judgment you ought well to consider whether the Native may probably live many or few years, and accordingly to divide that time, and thereby point out the time of access to riches.

The significators oriental of the ☉ import quickness, and the time sooner; but occidental of the ☉, nearer old age; retrograde Planets signify the same thing, viz. they retard; the Planets direct and swift in motion hasten the time.

Signs of Poverty.

All the significators of substance weak declare poverty.

The Moon in Conjunction with Saturn in an angle, though the Native were ever so rich, yet shall he be reduced to poverty.

The Quartile or Opposition of Saturn and the Moon destroys the substance,

The ☌ in the 2nd destroys the Natives estate and fortune be it ever so great, and he will be driven to many exigences and wants; and Saturn or Mars retrograde, peregrine and cadent, being in Quartile, or Opposition to the 2nd House or its Lord, makes the Native perpetually poor.

The Moon combust and her dispositor unfortunate, or the Place of the Conjunction, or Opposition oppressed of the infortunes, and they cadent, the Lord thereof being an infortune, and strong; or, Jupiter cadent, and his dispositor not potent foreshews, the Native from a vast estate shall come to great want.

Again, the Lord of the 2nd combust and ⊕ unfortunate, usually portends confiscation of property, bankruptcy, and ruin.

Oculus Taurus, Cor Scorpio, or Caput Algol with the ⊕, or joined to his Lord, expresses loss of riches, and threatens poverty.

Observe if the two malefic Planets Saturn and Mars, occupy angles in the Figure and the benefics are posited in succedent Houses, the Native will experience adversity in the early part of his life, but prosperity in the end.

Excellent Aphorisms for guiding the Judgment on Marriage.

You are to consider with judgment all the Significators of marriage, namely, the 7th House, its Lord, and Planet posited in the 7th, how they are affected, principally the Moon and Venus, if both these Planets be in barren Signs, viz. Gemini Leo Virgo, and also in cadent Houses, viz. 6th, 9th, 12th, or even in the 8th, these testimonies import either a single life, or an averseness to marriage.

If the Significators, but especially the Moon and Venus, are not so constituted; see then, if either of them is weak or little fortified, conjoined to Saturn, he being very potent, Venus herself alone, not having the support of any Planet by a good aspect, and if you find the Moon posited in a barren Sign, or cadent House, or extremely afflicted; these are arguments of no marriage, nor any desire thereto. But in this judgment you must always understand that Saturn ought to be very strong; for if Venus and the Moon be more fortified than Saturn, then the preceding judgment holds not true.

So when in a nativity you find Saturn more elevated than either the Moon or Venus, and no Planet assisting either of them, you may judge the Native's inclination for a single Life.

You must remember that the other significators of marriage are also to be examined, viz. whether they be in barren Signs, or cadent Houses, or much afflicted, and in Conjunction with Saturn, and he well fortified; for if the testimonies of these significators agree with the affliction of the Moon and Venus, without doubt the Native will then never marry.

The Moon in Scorpio, in Quartile of Saturn, he in Leo or Taurus; Moon combust of the Sun, and in Quartile or Opposition to Saturn, if she is in Capricorn, Aquarius, or Libra, the Native never marries.

The Quartile or Opposition of Venus and Saturn helps much to a single life; the Moon as well as Venus being in a barren Sign, and cadent House, and some of the other Significators either unhappily placed in bad Houses or unfruitful Signs.

The Testimonies of Marriage are these.

The Sign of the 7th, a prolific Sign.

The Lord thereof fortunate, or a benevolent Planet in the 7th.

The Moon and Venus in fruitful Signs, and in the 1st, 5th, 10th, or 11th Houses.

The Lord of the ascendant applying to the Lord of the 7th, there being also equal reception between them, the Native will desire marriage, and when you find these configurations or the greater part concurring, they are sufficient arguments the Native will marry, etc.

To know whether the Native will obtain his wife with ease, or much difficulty, you must consider all the qualities of the Significators of marriage, wherein if you find the greater part of them fortunate Planets, or well fortified, he shall then easily obtain his Wife; if they be weak, and are signified by the Infortunes, then not without labor and difficulty: but if they be all imbecile and ill affected, then shall he make love unto many, and be as oft deluded, and in conclusion have much difficulty in procuring a wife; in whose nativity Venus is not in some good aspect with Mars, that party shall suffer many inconveniences in his loves or affections.

Again, the nature of the Significators is to be considered, for the benevolent Planets do promise happy success; the greater happiness the stronger they are. The malevolent, usually much labor, although they are very powerful. I have ever observed, that when Saturn and Mars are in Opposition out of the 1st, and 7th Houses, or when Saturn alone hath been near the Cusp of the 7th, or when Venus hath been in Leo or Scorpio, and not in aspect of Mars, or when Mars hath been in Taurus Virgo or Capricorn in the 7th, whether in aspect to Venus or not, that the Native had extraordinary difficulty to procure a wife, and married at last upon a sudden, but yet prone to Women.

The Time of Marriage.

If all the Significators of Marriage, or the greater part, and amongst these the Moon is oriental of the Sun, and in oriental quarters of Heaven, viz. 10th, 11th, 12th, 4th, 5th, and 6th Houses, then the Native shall marry in youth, or after his more mature years, shall espouse a young woman.

If the Significators be occidental of the ☉, and in occidental quarters of Heaven, viz. 9th, 8th, 7th, 1st, 2nd, and 3rd, he shall either then very late contract matrimony, or else in his youth marry a widow, or one very aged.

Besides this, observe the motion of the Significators, for if they be direct and swift in motion, they declare marriage in youth: but if they be retrograde, slow in motion, or stationary, they prolong the time.

The more special time is best adjudged from the directions

of the degree of the 7th House, or Lord thereof, or of the ☽ or ♀ to the degree, or to the Lord of the Ascendant; the time of marriage is better discovered in my judgment, by directions of the Mid-heaven to the ☌, ✶, □, or △ of ♀, if she was strong in the Radix, or to the same aspects with the ☽; or by direction of the ☉, direct and converse to the body ✶, □, or △ of ☽ or ♀; or by direction of ☽ to any of the premised aspects of the ☉ or ♂; if the ☾ is directed to □ or ☍ of the ☉ or ♂, see if it does not fall in the terms of a fortune, for if not, the direction will be of no force; also either the Mid-heaven, or ☉, or ☾, directed to the ✶, or △ of the Lord of the 7th, or a fortunate Planet in the 7th, denotes the time of Marriage.

Testimonies of the Number of Wives.

If all the Significators of marriage be in watery Signs, which we usually term fruitful, for the most part they note many Wives, or more than one; the contrary, if posited in Gemini, Leo, or Virgo.

Among all the Significators the ☽ and ♀ give the most evident testimonies, as having most power in Men's marriages, so that either the ☽ in the 7th, in any Sign whatever, gives more than one Wife, unless she is extremely afflicted of ♄ or the ☉; I must confess I never knew that the Native failed of having a plurality of female friends, (alias, a concubine, or two,) when the ☽ was in the 7th, but not always two Wives, except she was potent.

The Moon conjoined to one Planet only, whether by platick or partile aspects, denotes only one wife; where observe, when she is thus joined to only one Planet, and is more strong than the Planet with whom she is in aspect, the man outlives his wife; but if the Planet to whom the Moon is joined is more powerful than the Moon, the husband dies before the wife.

If the Moon is bodily joined to no Planet, consider how many Planets, and they direct and free from combustion, and not in their detriment or fall, do behold her with a partile aspect, but so as the Moon apply to them, and not they to her, (the ☉ here is not considerable) from thence you may conjecture of the number of Wives; you must consider the quality of the Signs wherein the Planets are that aspect the Moon, for fruitful Signs double the number.

If no such things appear as before mentioned, consider how many Planets, direct and free from combustion, or the Sun beams, are constituted between the Mid-heaven and ♀, making progress from the Mid-heaven towards the Ascendant, and so many Wives shall the Native have.

If those Planets so posited between the Mid-heaven and ♀ shall suffer by retrogradation or combustion, and yet be in their essential dignities, viz. either House or exaltation, or in mutual reception of such dignities, then you may account those Planets in the number, for Significators of a Wife, or Wives.

When these rules hold not, or use cannot be made of them, observe how many Planets behold the Lord of the 7th, with a partile aspect, whether they be retrograde or combust, and from thence determine the number of Wives.

The best approved method I have hitherto found by experience is this; consider how many Planets there are in the Sign the ☽ is in, she applying to them, and not separated, so many Wives the Native may expect; if no such bodily presence be, observe how many Planets, having dignities in the Sign she is in, do behold her with a partile aspect, so many Wives may be hoped for, etc.

Observe this general rule about Wives, if the Significators be weak, they argue Sweet-hearts and Wenches, or such as he may woo for Wives, rather than marriage itself: again, if the Moon apply to a Planet in a common Sign, it argues two Wives: If she be in a fruitful Sign, and apply to a Planet in a fruitful or bicorporal Sign, it argues three Wives: if together with this aphorism, the Sign of the 7th be prolific, and the Lord of the 7th in a common or fruitful Sign, it is then without dispute the Native will have three Wives.

To know for whence or what Quarter the Native shall have his Wife, observe the following Rules.

The Significators of Marriage in the 9th or 3rd House, or else peregrine, having no essential dignities, portend the Native shall marry a stranger, and not one born in the same county or country he himself was born in.

The Lord of the 7th in the 9th, or Lord of the 9th in the 7th, intimates he marries one not born near his own country or place where his own birth was: yet she will prove a religious, rich and virtuous wife, especially if the significator be benevolent and well fortified: ♀ Lady of the 9th, in the 1st or 10th, gives a wife born in another country.

Aphorisms concerning the Position of Venus.

If ♀ be oriental, and in essential dignities, and ♃ in aspect with her; it prenotes the woman will be master.

Venus in the 2nd, argues the Native marries his wife for wealth.

Venus in the 6th, the Native marries a wife of servile or low condition, etc.

Venus in the 4th, in Quartile or Opposition to Moon in Aquarius, shews the wife to be light: if she be in Cancer it portends the Native will be much given to lechery.

Venus in the 7th, the Native is long ere he marries, and will love harlots.

Venus in the 11th, the Native will cohabit with a woman having children.

Venus in the 10th, the Native marries a gallant, noble soul; if in aspect with Jupiter the more noble.

Venus in the 1st with Saturn, especially if in his own house, or else in the House of Venus, renders the Native a wife that is either dishonest, aged, or a very poor sneaking wife.

Venus joined to Mercury in the 4th, or else in Mercury's House, Saturn posited in the 10th, portend the Native will marry a sordid woman, or of no quality: If she be at the same time in any aspect with Mars, she is strangely evil, and will be suspected of sorcery or poisons; in Cancer or Capricorn; it argues a whore; Moon in the fourth, and Venus with Saturn in the tenth, the wife will have no children, either by reason of age, or defect of nature.

Venus and Saturn in Conjunction in the seventh, shew the Native hath no faculty in, or is impotent to beget children.

Venus in Conjunction with Saturn, Jupiter, Mercury, gives laborious wives, good house-wives, women affectionately loving their husbands.

Mars with Venus denote the wife full of spirit, moveable, an ill house-wife, prodigal, and that the Native is or will be an adulterer.

Saturn mixing his aspect with Venus, increases licentiousness, filthiness, immodesty; Jupiter fairness, cleanliness, modesty; Mercury varies many times for good or evil, as dignified or unfortunate.

The riches attending his wife, or accruing by her portion must be considered from those Planets whom I specified before, viz. who did behold the Moon by any good aspect, or were in Conjunction with her; for if those Planets be benevolent, and essentially fortified, they declare a rich and wealthy wife, well descended, etc.; if they be malevolent Planets and ill dignified, they argue the contrary.

But I must here give you this general caution, viz. that you consider the quality and birth of the Native, before you rashly pronounce a noble wife, or one well descended, for let us admit I have a beggar's Nativity to calculate, and that he hath Jupiter in Sagittarius, free from all manner of im-

pediment, to signify the wife he shall marry, I shall then describe the person of Jupiter and his conditions, but I will not say she shall be noble or gloriously born, but will frame this judgment, that he shall marry a Wife so qualified, etc. but one well descended, as unto his condition, perhaps she may be daughter of some tradesman or farmer, etc. and this unto him, is as if she was nobly born, considering the difference between a beggar and a farmer, and as whereas being signified by Jupiter, she ought to be rich, etc. without doubt a Wife so signified, shall have some pretty portion from her parents and friends, and shall raise this poor man and beggar by this her marriage, to a better kind of living or subsistence, for the artist must not predict impossibilities, but to every one, *Quod capax, etc.*

It must be remembered that this judgment of Lilly's in the description of the Wife will only hold good in some cases, for sometimes I have found that neither the Sign on the Cusp of the 7th House, its Lord, or Planet posited therein, will describe the person of the Wife, but have prefered that Planet who disposes of the Lord of the 7th, especially if it happens to be the Moon or Venus, all which must be considered, and guide every judicious artist in his judgment.

But to return.—Generally, the Fortunes, or either of them in the 7th, especially if strong, argue a wealthy Wife and well descended: malevolent Planets in that House denote much trouble, if they be potent, perhaps the Wife may be rich, but withall ill conditioned.

The Lord of the 12th in the 7th, or Lord of the 7th in the 12th usually predicts a poor Wife, ill-bred and of obscure parents.

The Lord of the 7th in the 10th, or the Lord of the 10th in the 7th, promises a good Wife.

The Lord of the 2nd in the 7th, or Lord of the 7th in the 2nd, promises the same.

Signs of a Good Wife.

The happy aspect of Jupiter to Venus or Moon, with reception, in dignities equivalent, shews a wealthy Wife, and marriage with a person of great birth.

The Lord of the 7th in the 7th, gives an honest simple Wife.

The Lord of the 7th in the 8th if he be a fortune, argues a rich Wife, and born to have an inheritance very ample.

Royal fixed Stars of first magnitude, near the Cusp of the 7th, if the Cusp thereof be also fortunate, these testimonies argue a rich and good dispositioned Wife.

Signs of Ill Fortune by a Wife.

Malignant Planets in the 7th very strong, denotes riches with a wife, but not attainable without some scandel or trouble.

The Infortunes much debilitated in the 7th, denote Wives, or a Wife very poor, of an abject and sordid condition and birth

The Lord of the 7th in the 6th or 12th, or on the contrary, the Lord of the 6th or 12th in the 7th, shews the Wife to be either a servant, or very poorly born.

It is not good for the Native that either Saturn or Mars be in the 7th unless the Fortunes aspect them, and be not cadent from the House, for Saturn causes sorrow and travail in the matter of marriage, and Mars shews their death and destruction before the Native.

Venus in Quartile or Opposition of Moon signifies prejudice by marriage.

Venus in the 2nd, in an evil aspect of the malevolent Planets declares detriment by reason of the Wife.

The Moon Lady of the 7th and posited in the 8th, decreasing in light denies any great felicity in marriage.

Concord and Disagreement.

To know the mutual love and concord between Man and Wife you must consider the Planet or Planets shewing the number of Wives, whether they be Fortunes, and behold the Moon with a friendly aspect; if so, they do declare much love, sweet society, and that perpetual good-will shall continually between them. But if they be malevolent by nature, and a □ or ☌ to ☽, they will fall out upon every slight occasion, nor will there be ever any perfect unity between them.

If a benevolent planet aspect the ☽ with an evil aspect, the Native and his Wife shall then agree but moderately, yet in more things they will accord.

If a malevolent Planet have a friendly aspect to the ☽, they will agree but indifferently, and will be subject to disagree in most things, for as the evil aspect of the Fortunes hurt but little, so the benevolent aspect of the Infortunes tends to ill.

What I have said of the good or evil aspects in this matter hath only relation to the Lord of the 7th and the ☽, but not to any of the other Significators.

The most assured means to know the agreement or disagreement of Man and Wife is, by comparing their Genitures together, if they can be procured; wherein if you find the Sun

in the wife's Geniture, to be the Sign and degree the ☽ was in, in the Man's; or if the ☽ in the Wife's is the place of the Sun in the Man's, it is a very good Sign of unity and concord.

Or if the Significators of marriage are in ✶ or △, they shew unity and affection: and so contrary aspects, contrary affections.

Good Planets beholding the Moon, or Lord of the 7th, with a △, argues concord.

Venus with Saturn beholding Mars, there will arise jealousies between the Native and his wife.

Venus in the 12th, designs but ill-marriage; if Saturn be also in the 12th, the wife brings but little fortune.

Venus when she is in ill aspect with the Moon or the infortunes, shews dissention between man and wife, by reason of lasciviousness, &c.

The Significators of marriage in moveable Signs, argues instability in marriage, nor doth any great content arise from thence.

Venus in a moveable sign, argues an inconstant man in affection, nor will he be content with one woman, especially if the Moon or she be ♋ or ♈; Venus in a common Sign, argues delight in Marriage.

If the Lord of the Ascendant be in a common Sign, and Venus unfortunate, the Native will not be content with one woman. If the Moon beholds the Sun with a good aspect, both of them in humane Signs, and one of the Fortunes aspect either or both of them, the Native and his Wife will agree well; if the aspects between the Sun and the Moon be evil, and an Infortune have a □ or ☍ to one or both, they perpetually disagree. The Moon decreasing in light, and in ☌ of ♂ in a moveable Sign, the Native's Wife never loved him, but some other man.

Or if the Moon be Lady of the 7th, and decreasing in light, and be placed in the 8th, the Native will receive no felicity in matrimony.

Whether a Man or his Wife shall Die first.

It is of the utmost importance to know whether the Native or his Wife shall die first, and in this judgment you must have respect to the significators of the Wife or Lord of the 7th House, if these be afflicted by the Infortunes, or posited in cadent Houses, especially in the second, which is opposite to the eighth, it denotes the death of the Wife, or long and tedious infirmities.

The Moon only conjoined to one Planet, and so signifying but one Wife, if she be more fortified than the Planet

she is with, the Wife dies first; if the Planet be better fortified than the Moon, the Man dies first.

The Moon in the fourth, the Native's Wife or Wives will die first.

When the Moon is separated from Mars, and applies to Venus in the west, or occidental part of Heaven, the Native shall have many Wives, but they shall die before him.

The Moon and Venus in ☌ with Saturn in the 7th, argue the death of the Wife, and much ado to obtain one.

Venus in the 4th, in evil aspect of Saturn and Mars, argue the death of the Wife; if therein she be in a moveable Sign, the Native will have many Wives, but they will die before him.

The Moon in the 7th, in ill aspect of the Infortunes, without the assistance of Saturn or Venus, the Wife dieth first.

Venus being occidental of the ☉, peregrine, conjunct to the Infortunes, or in □ or ☍ of them, signify the Wife will live but a short space. Venus in ☌ with Mars, in the 12th, denotes the Native will be a knave to his Wife, and use her basely.

One of the Infortunes in the 7th or 4th, the Native shall bury his Wife.

The Infortunes peregrine in the 7th, having dominion therein, declares the Native shall see the death of his enemies and Wives.

The Lord of the 4th, combust or cadent, the Native's Wives die before him.

The Lord of the 7th unfortunate in the 8th, denotes the same.

Marriages of women are materially different to those of men, for their Significators are the Sun and Mars, the 7th House and Lord thereof, and the Planet or Planets in the 7th.

From the disposition of these Significators their quality and position, we judge in the same manner as Men's Nativities, accepting herein the Sun in the place of the Moon, and Mars in the place of Venus; and here we must consider whether the Significators be barren or prolific, or are in double-bodied or fruitful signs; whether the Significators be Fortunes or Infortunes, strong or weak.

The Testimonies of Marriage are these.

If the Significator in a Woman's Nativity be fruitful, strong in fortunate Houses, and in good aspect of the Fortunes, they then promise Marriage. But if the Significators be barren, placed in unfortunate Houses, weak and afflicted

of the malevolents, they argue no marriage: Venus being occidental in the 7th House, and Saturn in the 4th in a Woman's Geniture, argue the Woman hath no great desire to marry, and that she is nothing delighted in venereous sports.

If the Sun and Moon be in masculine Signs, or in the same masculine quarter of Heaven, or in one and the same Sign, it being masculine, the Woman will be a Virago, will not care for Men, and if she chance to marry, will prove a refractory Wife.

The Significators applying to each other by benevolent aspects, or being of themselves Fortunes, argue she marries without difficulty, contrary aspects and Significators the contrary.

The special time of Marriage is discerned by direction of the Mid-heaven or Sun; the general time by the Sun, for if he be in oriental Quadrants, he denotes marriage in youth either to a young or old Man, or after their full age with a young Man: if the Sun be in an occidental Quarter, he notes it will be long before she marries, and then with an old Man.

The number of husbands is taken from the position of the Sun, who in a sign of one form, or in aspect with one oriental Planet notes she will marry but one. The Sun in a sign of many forms or in aspect to many oriental Planets, shew she will marry more than once.

The Sign of the 7th, the Lord thereof and the Sun, in a common Sign, signify the woman shall have two husbands; either the Sun or Mars in a double bodied Sign, signifies two husbands: Venus in a common or tropical Sign, and her dispositer also in such Signs, denotes more husbands.

Again, look to how many Planets the Sun is joined corporally, in the Sign he is in at birth, partilly or platick, so many Husbands she will have. If the Sun is joined to no Planet by body, see how many Planets that have dignities in the Sign the Sun is in, do behold the Sun, the Sun applying to them, they not to him, so many Husbands the woman shall have.

From whence Marry.

If the Significators be peregrine, the Husband will be a stranger; or ⊕, in a woman's nativity, be in the 3rd, it denotes the same.

To know what Manner of Husband.

Take the Sign of the 7th to signify the shape of his body, the Lord thereof his conditions; with reference to the aspects

the Lord of the 7th and the Sun have to the other Planets, and this I ever found the most certain way; if the Husband is to be Saturnine, describe ♄, etc., if ♃, then do so for him, and so in the rest.

But it must be remembered, in some cases I have found that neither the Sign of the 7th, its Lord or Planet posited therein, will describe the husband, but the Planet configurated with the Sun, or to which he applies, according to the Sign in which he is posited.

If rich, contrary to the rules of the ancients I constantly observe this way, to examine the strength of the 8th House, the Lord thereof, and Planet or Planets posited therein, and according to their position and fortitude, so I judge; for if these Significators be strong, and free from malevolent aspects, they argue a rich Husband, and so on the contrary. If the Lord of the eighth be in his own House, and angular, I never fear the Husband's estate.

The agreement is discerned from the Significators of Marriage being in mutual reception, or in ✶ or △ to one another, or in good aspect with the Fortunes, they then shew unity: contrary aspects, and the Significators in the 12th, 6th or 8th, portend no concord.

Aphorisms for determining Issue.

The ☾ and ♉ in the 5th, and the Lord of the Sign and Signs wherein they are, free from all manner of impediment, denotes many Children.

Mercury being oriental, in good aspect with the Fortunes, for then he participates of their nature, shews many Children; but if occidental, and in configuration with the Infortunes, he then denotes Barrenness.

Luna in the 5th promises Children, but if ♄ be therein in the same House, they prove ill-conditioned.

If the Sign of the 5th, sign wherein the Lord of the 5th is, and sign ascending be prolific, many Children are promised.

Venus in the ascendant, and ♃ in the 7th, shews issue, and from them much good to the Parents.

Jupiter in △ to ☾, in humane or moist Signs, gives Children.

Moon and ♀ with ♃ in an angle, or in aspect from angles, signify many Children.

Venus and ☾ in the 5th House, especially in a fruitful Sign, give much issue, and declares the Children to prove well.

All the Planets in fruitful Signs, give abundance of Children.

Infortunes in the house of Children, therein unfortunate, if they be a little weak, the Native may have Children; if they be much afflicted or debilitated they will not live; if greatly they foreshew sterility.

Venus in the 1st or 7th, in ☌ or ☍ to ♄, or in any communicative dignities, i. e. he in her term, and she in his, or if ♄ be in ♉ and ♀ in ♑, it argues Barrenness to men, and Abortion, to women; or that what is produced, shall die ere it has seen the light.

Saturn in the 5th, and the ☉ in □ to ♅, denies Issue.

If Sol, ♄, or ♂ rule the Ascendant, 5th and 11th, without some good aspect of the Fortunes, or if they are in the house of Children, and no Planet occupy that house, simply they deny Children.

Sol with ♄ and ☿ in the 11th or 5th, aspecting the ☽, shew the Native will die without having Children, or if any be born they die suddenly

Aphorisms shewing the Death of Issue.

Saturn and ♂ in the 5th and 11th, are arguments the Children of the Native shall not live long.

Sol having dominion in the 5th, joined to an Infortune leaves not one Child alive.

Sol, ♄, and ☿, in ☌ in the Mid-heaven, in □ or ☍ of ☽, kills the Children.

Mars in ☍ to ♅, either kills the children, or denotes an ill-death to them; so also doth ♅ when in ☍ to ♄, he then kills the greater part of them.

Mercury in the Ascendant, and ♄ in the west, declares the children will live but a short time.

The Lord of the 5th, in the 8th, shews the Children will die before the Father.

The Lord of the 5th in ☌ with Infortunes, or with the Lord of the 8th, or in evil aspect of the Infortunes, kills the Children, etc.

Brief Observations in forming Judgement from the Planet that is Lord of the Ascendant.

1. If no Planet aspect the Lord of the Ascendant, then judge by him, not considering the Sign he is in.

2. But if he be retrograde, or in his detriment, or fall, judge by the Sign he is in.

3. If the Lord of the Ascendant behold the Ascendant, judge by the Sign ascending.

4. Lastly, if two Planets aspect the Ascendant, take him that beholds it most partile, or he that is in his own House, before a Planet in his exaltation.

Note. These things are to be considered as well in the conditions and qualities of the mind, as in the description and make of the body.

THE NATURE AND QUALITY OF THE SIGNS.

Fiery Signs.

Incline Men to be choleric, hasty, furious, quarrelsome, revengeful, proud, ambitious, importunate, hardy and rash; involving themselves in many troubles and misfortunes; yet they are mostly ingenious, but often changing their opinions and pursuits.

Airy Signs.

Shew Men cheerful, affable, courteous, liberal, free-hearted, faithful, good-natured, and loving mirth, such as singing, dancing, music, and all civil recreations; of modest manners, and of sound reason and understanding.

Earthy Signs.

Denote Persons of reserved thoughts, slow in speech, and deliberate in all their undertakings, keeping close their counsel and intentions. They also frequently prove to be very fraudulent, covetous and suspicious, seldom forgetting or forgiving injuries; often sorrowful and low-spirited; loving no ones esteem but their own; for the most part prudent and careful, but austere and surly in their manners and deportment.

Watery Signs.

Make Men cowardly, luxurious, wanton, mutable, dull, and sluggish; with low, effeminate, whining voices, very timorous and fearful, having much deceit in them; they are usually pretty much given to the schools and nurseries of Venus, which often prove a great injury to them, and sometimes their total ruin.

THE NATURE AND QUALITY OF THE PLANETS.

The Luminaries are to be considered as more powerful and significant than the rest of the Planets; and therefore any of the superiors in ♂ with the ☉ in ♌, influences much power and honor to the Native by virtue of the ☉, etc. So if ♄ be in ♂ with ♃ in ♐, the House of ♃, then ♄ acts in dependence to his dispositer. Any Planet strong in a good House, is of good signification, but much better if the Planet be a fortunate one by nature.

A malefic Planet weak in the 10th House, denies honor, if he beholds either the Cusp or the Lord thereof, by any malevolent aspect, then many impediments or obstructions prejudice or hinder the Native's advancement. Mars strong in the Mid-heaven, usually portends military preferment, dignity, or profession.

Saturn or Mars strong in a good House of a Figure, are as discords in music, corrected to effect a concord or harmony in sounds; for being well affected, they cause a perfect good; though it be attended with difficult means or methods to accompany it.

An Infortune in ☌ with a fortunate Planet is either impeded or deprived of the good signified; for though the fortunate Planet be in his own House, yet he partakes something of the nature of the Malefic, with whom he is conjoined.

Three Planets or more in ☌, act jointly and severally according to their respective natures, and to their heavenly states, but principally according to the nature and state of the most strong and ruling Planet. If an Infortune, (especially ♄,) be placed between two Planets which are in conjunction, he prevents or retards the good promised by the other two Planets, the nature or kind thereof is discovered by the House of heaven wherein such a congress is made.

Two Planets in reception, especially the Fortunes, (as ♃ in ♎ the House of ♀, and ♀ in ♐ the House of ♃) act or disperse their influence in a most amicable method, which being benevolent by nature, their virtues are the more powerful.

Many Planets in cardinal Signs in any Geniture, always effect some great things; if in one House, the Native receives or suffers an excess of good or evil, according to the nature of that House. The benevolent Planets, ♃, ♀, and ☿ also, retrograde in any Nativity, is of eminent import, adding to the felicity of a Native, and this is the more powerful if they are applying to the ☌ of the Earth or rather ⊕: but the re- of ♄ or ♂ in angles, is ever attended with difficulties and trogradation unhappinesses, from which positions I shall always pray *libera nos Domine.*

WHAT IS A NATIVITY?

A Nativity or Geniture is the exact moment of birth, or time of a Child's coming into the world: at this moment the Stars begin to act and operate in their influence upon their new born infant, by the power or intervention of those Angels who rule and govern the constellations than level with the Horizon, or that ascends upon the horoscope. St. Jerome in

his comment upon the xviiith Chapter of St. Matthew, says, great is the dignity of souls, from every man from his first rising and appearing under the Stars in his Nativity, hath an Angel delegated to him for his Custody or Safety.

From these configurations we are enabled to point out the incidents of the Natives future life, but it is necessary that the exact time of birth should be well ascertained, in order to be correct and certain in these speculations. It is well known that the celestial bodies are in perpetual motion, and therefore every quarter of an hour must considerably vary their position; as does also different parallels from any one given point of the Heavens; and hence it is that the latitude, as well as the true time of birth is absolutely necessary in calculating or bringing up the directions of a Nativity. The manner of calculating these directions has been taught in so clear and easy a manner, in the second and third parts of this book, that nothing more need be added of the kind in this fourth part.

General Effects produced by each Planet in each of the Twelve Houses.

Saturn in the 1st House or Ascendant, shews melancholy with many sorrows; if near the Ascendant, short life; if at a distance, innumerable troubles. In the 2nd, destroys the substance. In the 3rd, hatred between brethren; and danger and loss in journeying. In the 4th, death of father and mother before the Native; loss of inheritance and friends. In the 5th, barrenness, death of children and disobedient ones if living. In the 6th, much sickness, crosses by servants, and losses by cattle. In the 7th, an ungovernable Wife; short and wretched life, with many public Enemies. In the 8th a violent death and loss of legacies. In the 9th, many losses by sea. In the 10th, dishonour, imprisonment, short life to the parents, death by sentence of a judge. In the 11th, despair, false friends, death of children. In the 12th, sorrow, trouble, imprisonment, and persecution by private Enemies. These are the common effects of ♄, when significator, and weak or meanly dignified.*

Jupiter in the 1st, gives a good happy, and long life, just

* Observe Saturn in the Mid-heaven in a Nocturnal Geniture, is the author of Infelicity, a destroyer of Substance, and hindereth marriage and children, chiefly if he be found in the place, Signs or terms of any malefic Star, but if either of the benevolents (as Jupiter or Venus) behold him with a good aspect, they take away his malignity, giving those things which Saturn denies, being so placed by night, but Saturn by night is always evil, especially if unfortunate in any of the Angles and signifies much evil to the Native, for he killeth the wife, destroyeth the children and afflicteth the whole course of a man's life with bitter evils.

and honest. In the 2nd, profusion of riches. In the 3rd, friendship of brethren, and fortunate journies. In the 4th, lands and inheritances, with an honourable life and end. In the 5th, many obedient and virtuous children. In the 6th, health and faithful servants, profit by dealing in cattle. In the 7th, an honourable marriage, a good wife, an honest wise, discreet and virtuous woman. In the 8th, a natural death, long life, legacies. In the 9th, a true Christian, ecclesiastical preferment, prosperous sea voyages. In the 10th, preferment, great and durable honors, and riches by trading. In the 11th, much happiness, increase of riches, faithful and great friends, the accomplishment of all his desires. In the 12th, profit by cattle, victory over private Enemies; this is to be understood if strong; if weak the good will be much abated.*

Mars in the 1st House denotes shortness of life, quarrels, scars in the head or face. In the 2nd, poverty, want, and many troubles. In the 3rd, evil brethren, danger ill travelling, an ungodly person. In the 4th, short life to the Father, strife between him and the Native, destruction to his inheritance. In the 5th, wicked children, sickly and of short life. In the 6th, fevers, bad servants, loss of cattle. In the 7th, quarrels, law-suits, public Enemies, sickness, an evil wife, a follower of lewd woman. In the 8th, a violent death, loss of substance, poverty. In the 9th, changing of religion, loss at sea by robbers, an atheist. In the 10th, troubles from magistrates, sickness to the mother. In the 11th, false friends, loss of substance. In the 12th, many private Enemies, imprisonment, loss by servants and cattle; this if ♂ be weak and afflicted; if strong there, these evils abate, and sometimes, on the contrary good takes place. †

* Observe Jupiter in the 2nd House signifies possessions in foreign Countries, and from strangers, especially if Mercury be joined to him by any good aspect. But although Mercury be joined with Jupiter, yet if Saturn or Mars behold them, it signifies mutability of estate, changing from good actions to bad, and he that hath Jupiter so posited, all the term of his life will be various and subject to mutability, sometimes abounding with riches, and at other times cast down under the burden of poverty. In the 3rd, he is neither good nor evil, but equally moderate, sometimes a helper forward to spend an estate, and sometimes a gatherer together of riches. In the 4th, according to the quality of the Sign shews to some discoveries of hidden treasure, and always giveth to the Native a happy old age to the time of his death. But if the Sun is in opposition to him he signifies the father to be noble and honourable, but the Native will spend his estate in his middle age, and get it again afterwards.—Thus placed by night, he gives an indifferent estate, and in process of time happiness.—In the 5th, he signifies great felicity and preferment;—In the 7th, by day, signifies wealth and long life, but in nocturnal Genitures, he generally signifies wives and children, for the Native shall lose a dear wife, and see the miserable death of son or daughter but in old age he gives increase of estate.

† Observe Mars unfortunate in any Angle of a Geniture by day doth vari-

The ☉ in the 1st, gives honour, glory and long life. In the 2nd, a flow of riches continually, but a consumption of it. In the 3rd, good brethren and journies, a stickler for his religion. In the 4th, honour in age, a great, and noble inheritance. In the 5th, few children, yet such as will be good and virtuous. In the 6th, diseases of the mind. In the 7th, sickness, yet a good wife and honourable adversaries In the 8th, a good portion with a wife, danger of a violent death. In the 9th, ecclesiastical preferment, truly religious, gain by the sea. In the 10th, greatness, honour, glory, and power, from Kings, Princes, and noble women, much exceeding the quality of the Native's birth, the friendship of eminent persons. In the 11th, great, noble and faithful friends, the fulfilling of ones hopes. In the 12th powerful adversaries; this if strong; if weak in many things the contrary..*

Venus in the 1st, gives health, but inclines to the pleasure of women. In the 2nd, abundance of riches by the means of women. In the 3rd, religious, loving brethren advantage from travelling. In the 4th, an inheritance, and honorable old age. In the 5th, many comely, obedient, and virtuous children. In the 6th, sickness from woman kind, faithful, pleasing servants, profit in small cattle. In the 7th, an exceeding good and virtuous wife, a happy marriage, and hav-

ous ways afflict the Native; if by day Mars possess one Angle, Saturn another, and Jupiter another, he signifies a violent death to the Native born under their influence, and also shews them to be self Murderers.—If by day Mars possess one Angle and the Sun another, loss and death by fire, if the Moon, they foreshew a violent death, and the mother to die a cruel death.

* Observe the Sun in the Ascendant scarcely gives any brethren: and by night in conjunction, quartile, or opposition to Mars, signifies the Native will kill his elder brother, and destroy all his own estate. In the 2nd, shews a languishing body, a short and sickly life, and crossed with many troubles. In the 3rd, signifies an evil death to the father. In the 4th, aspected of Saturn or Mars, foreshews the death of the father, destruction of the whole family and estate, yet he signifies a happy old age, but the Native inconstant in his affection towards his wife and children. In the 5th, shews the Native will easily attain to all his desires, but if in conjection or sextile with Venus, he signifies great honor and dignity, and although Saturn and Mars be with him or in aspect to him, it doth not much hurt the Native, because of the natural goodness of the 5th House, but is only hurtful to the children of the Native. In the 6th, without the assistance of Jupiter or Venus, gives great and long sickness, and if Mars at the same time be in the Ascendant, he afflicts the Native with hurt, or some wound by iron; denotes the father to die a sudden, evil death, and destroys the Native's estate. In the 7th, beheld by Saturn and Mars, brings much sickness and affliction, according to the malignancy of the afflicting Planet. In the 8th, in conjunction, quartile, or opposition of Saturn or Mars, gives sudden death to the father. In the 10th, in a diurnal Geniture with Mars in the 7th, and the Moon in any other Angle beholding Mars, shews the Native shall suffer imprisonment, let him ever so great. In the 12th, shews sudden death to the father.

ing but few enemies. In the 8th, a good dowry with a wife, a natural death. In the 9th, ecclesiastical preferment, a real religious man, prosperity by sea. In the 10th, honor and preferment by the means of women, the favor of great women. In the 11th, honorable and faithful female friends. In the 12th, profit by great cattle, free from the power of private enemies; this if strong: if weak, the contrary. *

Mercury in the 1st, gives noble thoughts, good invention, graceful elocution, a lover of arts and sciences. In the 2nd, profit by arts, sciences, books, writing, and the like. In the 3rd, a Mathematician, swift and prosperous journies, a scholar, one of an excellent invention, crafty brethren, a moral person. In the 4th, the getting of an inheritance by craft, or deceit. In the 5th, ingenious children. In the 6th, theivish servants, diseases of the breath and brain. In the 7th, a fomentor of quarrels, vexatious law-suits; a discreet wife. In the 8th, augmentation of estate by wills and legacies, death by a consumption, more especially if in an earthy sign. In the 9th, an incomparable artist, and one that understands all sciences and curious arts, even the most obscure and occult things, a finder out of many new and excellent inventions. In the 10th, liberal preferment, or a secretary to some great person. In the 11th, inconstant friends. In the 12th, his private enemies will be but of little effect. This if Mercury be strong and not afflicted; if weak, the good will much abate. †

* Observe Venus in the 2nd House, by day, giveth many crosses, hinders marriage, and gives sudden death to the wife. In the 3rd, she is fortunate, if well aspected by Jupiter, the Native is religions, and marries one belonging to the Church. In the 4th, by night, in Cancer, Capricorn, Gemini, Sagittary, or Pisces, she foreshews widowhood, and loss about women. In the 5th, she is fortunate. In the 6th, in a feminine Geniture, shews the Native shall have hard difficulty in labor, and undergo great peril in child-birth; but a benevolent Planet in the 10th, causes happiness and good fortune. In the 7th, in Taurus, by night, gives a happy old age, but hinders marriage and children. In the 8th, by day, she hinders marriage, and signifies the wife to be barren and deformed if he marries, but if Mercury be with her, or malevolent Planets behold them, by a quartile or opposition, or be with them, it signifies destruction of estate, and death by a gonerrhœa, or apoplexy But in the 8th, by night, signifies riches to the Native, and great profit by the death of women, and denotes a sudden death, but without terror or torment. In the 11th, with the Moon by day, she gives wealth and good fortune to the Native from his youth to the day of his death. But in the 12th, by night, signifies daily trouble and grief to a woman, by reason of lust and unlawful love; if the Native be a man, she signifies him to marry his maid, or some common whore, whereby he is without children, and by day, signifies death to the Native through women, according to the nature of the Sign.

† Observe Mercury in the Ascendant in a diurnal Geniture in his dignities, signifies Philosophers, Grammarians, Geometricians, and such as study celestial sciences. In the 5th, by night, he signifies profuse spenders of their

The Moon fortunate in the 1st, shews the Native will travel, will gain superiority and rule over others, the favor of Princes and noble woman, and great advantages thereby. In the 2nd, sometimes riches, sometimes poverty, an unsettled fortune. In the 3rd many Journies. In the 4th, gain by travelling. In the 5th, many children. In the 6th, diseases of the brain, good servants, and gain by small Cattle. In the 7th, an honourable marriage. In the 8th, danger of drowning, but otherwise a long and healthful life. In the 9th, travels beyond sea, inconstancy of religion, acquaintance with arts and sciences. In the 10th, great honor unto the Native, prosperity by sea voyages; the favor of some noble Woman. In the 11th, the friendship of great Ladies and noble friends. In the 12th, the common people, will be his private Enemies. This if ☽ be strong and free from affliction; if weak and afflicted the contrary.§

The ☌ in the 1st, shews honesty. In the 2nd, a good Estate. In the 3rd, fortunate Journies and honest kindred. In the 4th, gain by land and travels. In the 5th, long life;

estate, or that they are intrusted with, and such as seldom keep any money, he sometimes also signifies Geometricians and Astrologers. In the 6th, he brings great fortune and highly advances him by learning, especially if another Planet be in the 10th. In the 10th, he gives the Native success in great and admirable actions, and a grave, wise, benevolent, and faithful person, and employed for great Men, etc. If Jupiter beholds Mercury by a sextile or trine in a Nativity by day, or if Venus beholds him with the like aspect by night. But if Mars beholds Mercury by either a quartile or opposition be various ways hinders promotion by some kind of offence, and often causes banishment, or some great damage and loss, and if the Moon at the same time he joined to Mars it causes a violent death.

§ Observe Luna in the Ascendant by day, conjoined with the Infortunes, and aspected of no good Planets, signifies a short life to the Native, and causes blindness through some sudden hurt or wound, if in conjunction with Saturn and decreasing in light, but if joined with Mars it signifies ruptures hæmorrhoids, and such like infirmities. In the 4th, by day, signifies an ignoble mother, and her husband to outlive her; but if Saturn be in any other angle of the Geniture, and Venus in the West angle, it brings servitude or imprisonment to the mother. In the 5th, by night, signifies the Native to have many sons, and joy with or from them, but in a diurnal Geniture she giveth many daughters. In the 6th, increasing in light, and well aspected by the Fortunes, gives profit to the Native by four footed beasts, and health of body. In the 7th, in a nocturnal Geniture, in her essential dignities, increasing in light, and well aspected by Jupiter or Venus, gives a happy old age, profit by Woman, and a happy marriage, but if she is decreasing in light and oppressed by the malevelent beams of the infortunes especially in a diurnal Geniture she hinders marriage, and when she doth give a Wife, she is a Widow, barren or very much deformed and ill-favored. In the 8th, she gives an Estate by the dead and sudden death without pain or torment. In the 12th, in a nocturnal Geniture she signifies long life.

These being the most material positions. I have here thought it requisite to explain them more fully.

happy and virtuous Children. In the 6th, health, good servants, and profit in Cattle. In the 7th, an honest and virtuous Wife. In the 8th, shews many Legacies, and a natural death. In the 9th, sincere piety, prosperity at sea. In the 10th, great honor and preferment. In the 11th, prosperity and riches, everlasting and faithful friends. In the 12th, open Enemies. The position of the ⊕ gives substance from all those signified by that House in which it is posited unless afflicted by the Malifics.

General effects produced by the Planets in each of the Twelve Signs of the Zodiac.

♄ in ♈ or ♒, signifies wisdom, prudence and stability of fortune. In ♐ or ♓, a just man, and one that will be rich and acquire unto honorable things. In ♈ or ♏, a strong body and furious. In ♌, desirous of greatness and honor, but seldom obtaining it. In ♉ or ♎, a secret lover of woman. In ♊ or ♍, one that is studious of arts and sciences. In ♋, infirmities of the breast and lungs.

♃ in ♈ or ♒, signifies avarice and covetousness, living always in fear of poverty. In ♐ or ♓, infinite riches honors and dignities, and that among great persons, and clergymen. In ♈ or ♏, the Native may rise to honor by war. In ♌ shews honor glory, and treasure from Kings and eminent persons. In ♉ or ♎, riches by women, or an honorable wife. In ♊ or ♍ a good rhetorician. In ♋ increase of substance beyond expectation, with honor and renown; for ♋ is not only the exaltation of ♃, but also a cardinal Sign and the northern tropic.

♂ in ♈ or ♒, shews a lofty and magnanimous spirit and wise. In ♐ or ♓ it shews the acquaintance of Kings, Princes and Noblemen. In ♈ or ♏, a great and ingenious wit, mathematician. In ♌, soreness of the eyes, danger of a violent death. In ♉ or ♎, luxuriousness, a boaster, given to falsehood, and a deluder of women. In ♊ or ♍, one ingenious in arts and sciences, but covetous, knavish, and deceitful. In ♋, a wavering, furious, rash man, one that may arrive to honor, but will precipitate himself therefrom afterwards.

The ☉ in ♈ or ♒, shews a dejected forlorn man. In ♐ or ♓, one that shall attain honor and glory in the world, and be a companion of Princes and noble persons. In ♈ or ♏, a great and eminent man, a commander, captain, or general of an army, a subtle, crafty, politic statesman. In ♌, one that may attain the height of honor, glory and renown, *quod capax*, according to the quality of his birth, and also shews

long life if Hyleg and in good configuration with the Fortunes. In ♉ or ♎, one that will rise or fall by the means of women. In ♊ or ♍, a good engineer a soldier and mathematician. In ♋ honor by different women, by whom he shall afterwards receive injury.

♀ in ♑ or ♒ give hopes of honor and friends, many children, and old age. In ♐ or ♓, short journies, imprisonment, sickness or death. In ♈ or ♏ private or public enemies, and many journies; as also a lover of different women. In ♌, a sincere lover of his friends and an affectionate parent. In ♉ or ♎, a just and religious person, healthful and of long life. In ♊ or ♍, one covetous, but sickly, and although religious, yet an enemy to himself. In Cancer, a traveller, and one that will arrive to great honor and preferment.

♂ in ♑ or ♒, shews honor and travelling by sea, with much pleasure, but sickness sometimes attending it. In ♐ or ♓, lands, inheritances, an honorable wife, and good friends, but one that does things to his own detriment. In ♈ or ♏, private enemies, many journies, sickness and a short life. In ♌, lands and inheritances, yet subject to private enemies and imprisonment. In ♉ or ♎, much wealth and riches, travelling by sea, one religious with some sickness. In ♊ or ♍, wit and ingenuity, knowledge of arts and sciences, honor and renown, and a lover of children. In Cancer, many good friends and many journies by land.

The ☾ in ♑ or ♒, shews one religious, and having many adversaries, as also sore eyes. If Sagittarius or ♓, a sickly body, but one that shall attain honor, glory, renown, and the favors of great men. In ♈ or ♏, a lover of friends and children. In ♌, one that shall be very rich through his own industry. In ♉ or ♎ a great lover of children, and one that shall have many friends. In ♊ or ♍, inheritances, lands and private enemies. In Cancer, happiness and long life.

General Effects produced by the Position of the Lords of the Houses.

The Lord of the Ascendant in the Ascendant, shews a fortunate and happy life, and one that shall overcome all his enemies. In the 2nd, wealth and riches by his own industry. In the 3rd, many journies. In the 4th, lands and inheritance. In the 5th, children, and one given to pleasure. In the 6th, sickness. In the 7th, public adversaries, the Man will be an enemy to himself. In the 8th, Legacies. In the 9th, one religious, learned, and a traveller into foreign Countries. In the 10th, honor, preferment and favor of Princes. In the 11th, friends. In the 12th, danger of imprisonment.

The Lord of the 2nd in the 2nd, imports great wealth. In the 3rd, wealth by brethren and travelling. In the 4th, by the Father. In the 5th, by gaming. In the 6th, wealth by dealing in cattle. In the 7th, by Marriage and woman-kind. In the 8th, by legacies. In the 9th, by the church, arts and sciences, religion, and the sea. In the 10th, by honor, preferment, trade, merchandise. In the 11th, by friends. In the 12th, by great cattle. In the Ascendant, by birth or good fortune.

The Lord of the 3rd in the 3rd, shews affectionate bretheren, good journies. In the 4th, gain by travelling. In the 5th, pleasure in travelling. Ih the 7th, thieves and robbers, and sometimes the Native meets with a wife. In the 8th, death in travelling. In the 9th, religious journies. In the 10th for preferment, trade and the like. In the 11th, for study and improvement. In the 12th, imprisonment in travelling. In the Ascendant, for pleasure, and in pursuit of useful discoveries. In the 2nd, for profit, wealth and riches.

The Lord of the 4th in the 4th, forshews a good estate or inheritance, a father of long life. In the 5th, that the estate shall go to the Native's children. In the 6th, that an estate may be acquired by physic. In the 7th, that he may have an estate with a wife. In the 8th, by some gift, legacy of wife's portion. In the 9th, by merchandise, by arts and sciences, or by the church. In the 10th, by some office, dignity, or preferment. In the 11th, by means of a friend. In the 12th, by dealing in great cattle. In the Ascendant, by inheritance. In the 2nd, by purchase. In the 3rd, by travel and death of brethren.

The Lord of the 5th in the 5th, imports strong, lively and virtuous children. In the 6th, that his children, shall be industrious to gain wealth, and probably by his servants. In the 7th, that they will travel, and that the Native and they will disagree. In the 8th, that they shall possess the mother's dowry. In the 9th, that they shall be given to pleasure, and go to sea for the father. In the 10th, that they shall be sickly, and follow the father's trade. In the 11th, that they shall have many public adversaries, and prove enemies to themselves. In the 12th, that they shall have many legacies, but prove enemies to their parents. In the Ascendant, they will prove religious and learned, and love their parents. In the 2nd, they will prove honorable and possess the Native's substance. In the 3rd, that they shall have many friends, and such as will be of their own kindred. In the 4th, that they will have private enemies.

The Lord of the 6th in the 6th, foreshews sickness, yet just servants. In the 7th, sickness by women and quarreling.

In the 8th, danger of a violent death and dangerous sickness. In the 9th, sickness at sea. In the 10th, sickness from hard labor and employment in some trade. In the 11th, by the loss of some friend, or frustration of his expectations. In the 12th, by vexation of private enemies. In the Ascendant, by irregularity of life. In the 2nd, by loss of some estate. In the 3rd, in consequence of some journey. In the 4th, by loss of inheritance, or disappointment in trades. In the 5th, from vexatious children, and looseness of life.

The Lord of the 7th in the 7th, shews sickness or death to the Native, yet a good wife. In the 8th, danger of losing the wife's fortune. In the 9th, she will be a stranger to him and a traveller. In the 10th, she will be honorable, and possess a good inheritanse. In the 11th, she will be an entire lover of him and his children. In the 12th, she will be his private enemy. In the Ascendant, she will be a very great lover of her husband. In the 2nd, she will be the augmentation of his estate. In the 3rd, she will be a lover of her husband's kindred, and desire to go beyond sea. In the 4th, she will be very honorable and the Native shall have land by her. In the 5th, a lover of the Native's children. In the 6th, she will be a great affliction to the Native herself.

The Lord of the 8th in the 8th, shews the Native shall die a natural death, and that he shall have a rich wife. In the 9th, he will be in danger of drowning. In the 10th, his death may be by sentence of the judge. In the 11th, by the conspiracy of some pretended friend. In the 12th, by conspiracy of a private enemy. In the Ascendant, by the Native's own irregularity. In the 2nd, by means of some monies or goods. In the 3rd, either by the conspiracy of some brother, kinsman, neighbor, or thief. In the 4th, by means of the loss of an estate, or some grief. In the 5th, by drunkenness or debauchery. In the 6th, by sickness. In the 7th, by public adversary, or eminent grief.

The Lord of the 9th in the 9th, shews good sea voyages, knowledge of arts and sciences, a religious person. In the 10th, that religion will be profitable and honorable, and the Native shall be famous for his learning. In the 11th, church dignity, and merchandise by means of a friend. In the 12th, church lands, and that the Native will have clergymen for his enemies. In the Ascendant, makes the Native truly religious and learned, and a merchant. In the 2nd, riches by sea, arts, sciences, and the church. In the 3rd, a sectarian. In the 4th, gain by the church. In the 5th, one of a loose religion. In the 6th, honorable church preferment, and yet the Native may be a slave in his religion. In the 7th, an

enemy to the church. In the 8th, death or persecution for his religion. *

The Lord of the 10th in the 10th, gives great honor, glory and renown. In the 11th, by means of a friend. In the 12th, through an enemy. In the Ascendant, by the Native's own industry. In the 2nd, by means of his money. In the 3rd, by a brother, kinsman, or neighbor, or by travel. In the 4th, by his father. In the 5th, by a wife's friend. In the 6th, by means of a servant. In the 7th, by a wife. In the 8th, by a wife's fortune, it may also signify a violent death. In the 9th, by religion, arts, sciences, and navigation.

The Lord of the 11th in the 11th, imports great friends. In the 12th, private friends. In the Ascendant, friends indeed to the Native. In the 2nd, such as shall augment the Native's fortune. In the 3rd, such as are of his kindred or neighbors, or as he shall find in travelling. In the 4th, his father. In the 5th, some friends of his wife. In the 6th, his servants. In the 7th, his wife. In the 8th, some brother's servant. In the 9th, a clergyman, merchant, or lover of arts. In the 10th, kings, princes, noble and great persons.

The Lord of the 12th in the 12th, denotes strong and powerful private enemies. In the Ascendant, such as are among his own family or household. In the 2nd, some person envying his situation or estate. In the 3rd, kindred and neighbours. In the 4th, his father. In the 5th, his children. In the 6th, his servants. In the 7th, his wife becomes an enemy. In the 8th, some distant relation. In the 9th, some merchant, foreign dealer, or dignitary in the church. In the 10th, kings, princes, or men in power. In the 12th, some particular reputed friend.

General Effects produced by the Conjunction of the Planets

The conjunction of Saturn and Jupiter shews inheritances of houses and lands, possessions, and many worldly profits arising from cultivating the earth and tillage; if Mars afflict not, nor the evil beams of the Sun. If Jupiter is significator the Native is mistrustful.

The conjunction of Saturn and Mars foreshews much evil, the Native will be afflicted and vexed, shall undergo many

* If the Lord of the 9th be in the Ascendant, the Native will travel much. If in the 2nd, he will gain by his travels. If in the 3rd, he cohabits with strange women, and often shifts his residence. If in the 4th, his parents will have some occult infirmities, and the Native will die on his travels. If in the 5th, he will have children in another Country. If in the 6th he will gain by his servants, and his cattle will fall sick on his travels. If in the 7th, he will obtain a good and obedient wife. If in the 8th, the Native will be greedy of procuring an estate, and for that cause will journey beyond the seas, etc.

troubles, and go through great difficulties. If you would know the cause of the good or evil, you must consider the House in which the configuration happens, and what House the configurated Planets are Lords of, and accordingly judge of the particular matter or accident, be it good or evil; for things are much varied according to the various positions and domination of the Planets, by which you must necessarily vary those judgments.

The conjunction of Saturn and the Sun, shews the loss of inheritance, danger of houses being burnt, the Native likely to be cheated, to receive much detriment, and it may be, lose all and become poor; except a fortunate Planet be located in the 2nd House.

The conjunction of Saturn and Venus shews one libidinous and that he shall marry a woman entirely of an opposite temper and disposition to himself, get dishonor among womenkind, be unhappy in marriage, and lead by reason of his wife a very disconsolate life. If Venus be significatrix, she is much afflicted; but if Saturn, then the conjunction is advantageous; and this is to be observed in all similar cases.

The conjunction of Saturn and Mercury, shews craft, subtilty, and policy, that the Native will dive into many secret, deep, and occult things, find out mysteries, be covetous and proud, mixed with a certain kind of gravity. If Saturn be significator, the Native has a good elocution; but if Mercury, he has a great impediment in his speech.

The conjunction of Saturn and the Moon shews one poor and obscure. If Saturn be significator, the man is changeable, seldom an hour in one mind, often doing things, and then repenting of them again; but if the Moon be significatrix, he is grave, cautious, malapert, ever wise and conceited, and for the most part wilful in all things.

The conjunction of Jupiter and Mars, if Jupiter be significator, makes the Native choleric, hasty, angry, proud, bold, presumptuous and daring, gives him some martial command, and glory and renown in warlike undertakings; but if Mars be significator, it makes him milder, religious, good, just, gives him preferment in the law, or he becomes a priest, deacon, bishop, or other dignitary in the church.

The conjunction of Jupiter and the Sun, if Jupiter be significator, he afflicts the Native severely, casts him into a deep melancholy or despair, seizes him with a fever or frenzy, brings the body to a consumption, and afflicts the estate with considerable loss, even to his utter ruin and destruction; yet when by direction Jupiter frees himself from the Sun's beams, these evils will cease; but if the Sun be significator, he so debilitates Jupiter, that the configuration can promise nothing; yet it makes the Native religious.

The ♂ of Jupiter and Venus, if Jupiter be significator, the Native is superlatively happy (more especially if the ♂ happens in ♓ the House of Jupiter, and exaltation of ♀) he increases in wealth and substance, honor and glory, health of body and tranquility of mind, having in general the love of women-kind; but if ♀ be significatrix, the Native has health, beauty, and riches, attains to great honor and renown, is truly virtuous, pious, and religious, and has generally ecclesiastical or jurisprudential preferment. This is one of the most happy, fortunate configurations that can be.

The conjunction of Jupiter and Mercury, if Jupiter be significator, makes the Native virtuous, wise, religious, of great knowledge and of good elocution, makes a general scholar, and gives him the knowledge of most arts and sciences; he may prove to be the ambassador of a Prince, or such like; but if Mercury be significator, the Native is solid, serious, well disposed, and grave, pious, and religious, and probably may acquire a good estate by merchandise, or some ecclesiastical promotion.

The conjunction of Jupiter and the Moon, if Jupiter be significator, the Native proves a traveller, probably beyond sea, he is generally of a changeable and mutable mind, and although naturally of a very good humour and condition, yet sometimes froward, pettish, and peevish; if the Moon be significatrix, it gives riches and treasures, according to the Native's capacity or birth, makes him wise, prudent, religious, and honorable, give him the acquaintance of great and worthy men, clergymen and such like, and probably church preferment.

The conjunction of Mars and the Sun, shews a hot and dry constitution, danger of short life, and death by hectic fevers, marasmus, or by fire or lightning; if Mars be significator, the Native has the favor of Kings and Princes, and it may be their frowns too, to his utter undoing; he may rise hastily, but perhaps to a precipice: if the Sun be significator, the Native proves valiant and warlike, attains some martial command or preferment, but if he goes into war he is killed in the battle, or at best comes of wounded, or with the loss of a limb.

The conjunction of Mars and Venus, if Mars be significator, the Native is given up to women, and retains the acquaintance of such as have an infamous life and conversation; he is gentle, kind, and courteous, and though sometimes hasty, yet of a good humor and disposition, so that his kindness is oftentimes his undoing; but if Venus be significatrix, the Native is lustful, lascivious, a fornicator, adulterer, given over to wicked and lewd courses, hasty, rash, proud, incon-

siderate, quarrelsome, and running himself into many hazards, dangers, troubles, and losses.

The conjunction of Mars and Mercury, if Mars is significator, he makes the Native talkative, pragmatical, a smatterer in learning, a babbler and deceiver, yet industrious for the promotion of his own ends and designs, it gives no great preferment, he may be a knavish apparator, cheating petty fogger, or pedantic pedagogue; but if Mercury be significator, the Natives proves one of harsh manners and conversation, of an ill life, a thief, felon, highwayman, murderer, traitor, etc.

The conjunction of Mars and the Moon, if Mars be significator, the Native is of evil manners and infamous conversation, rises to no great preferment; but if it should so happen that the scale should turn, his advance may be by means of some great lady; but if the Moon be significatrix, the Native is bold, rash, furious, adventurous, quarrelsome, given to cruelty and base actions, may prove a thief, murderer or traitor; seldom lives long, for this position declares a short life, and that the Native may die a violent death by the means of fire, iron, a fall, blow, wound, or by the hands of the executioner.

The conjunction of the Sun and Venus, if the Sun be significator, it makes the manners of the Native soft and effeminate, yet he is born to glory, and to do and perform great actions; he obtains the love of women, but associates himself with such as are base, obscure, infamous, and much below his rank and qualities; if Venus is significatrix, it shews a short life, one aiming at glory, but not attaining it; the Native is hective or consumptive, melancholy, meets with many crosses, losses and vexations, lives not out half his days.

The conjunction of the Sun and Mercury, if the Sun be significator, the Native is endowed with wit, ingenuity, arts and sciences, understands languages, and the power of words, and because Mercury delights to be under the Sun's beams, not being thereby hurt as the other Planets, the Native has excellent elocution, and proves a good rhetorician and logician; if Mercury is significator, he exercises all his wit, craft and policy, for the accomplishing of high matters, and the attaining of great things; he becomes the favorite of a King, Prince, or great man.

The conjunction of the Sun and the Moon, if the Sun be significator, though he generally gives a great spirit, and aiming at magnificent things, yet this configuration gives only mean acquaintance, and the society of common people, makes him mutable and changeable, and his fortunes as unstable; if the Moon be significatrix, the Native shall aim at noble

things but not attain them, many crosses shall befall him, and his life shall be short.

The conjunction of Venus and Mercury, if Venus be significatrix, it gives a delicate beautiful body, endowed with wit, ingenuity and eloquence, makes the Native courteous, and complaisant, furnishes him with variety of arts and learning, and is a configuration of very good import: if Venus be Lady of the 2nd, it gives a good increase of fortune through merchandise, or the study of arts and sciences; if Mercury be significator, it makes the Native an orator, furnishes him with courtship, soft and effeminate words, makes him pleasant in all company, gives him the society and love of women; and if Venus be strong, of great ladies, in short it makes him exceedingly happy.

The conjunction of Venus and the Moon, if Venus be significatrix, makes the Native mutable and changeable, a mere Proteus, yet with a deal of pleasantness and satisfaction to others, it makes him of many words, a great promiser, but no performer, lofty, proud, conceited, and gives him profit by the sea, and all lunar and moist commodities; if the Moon be significatrix, the Native is very effeminate, and courtly, having a voluble tongue, free language, and excellent discourse, inclined to the love of women, which if Venus be strong, is only to such as are virtuous; delights in music, dancing, and merry company, never thinking of sorrow, or laying any thing to heart.

The conjunction of Mercury and the Moon, if Mercury is significator, makes the Native travel into foreign countries, desirous to see new things, fashions and places; gives him favor and esteem among the ladies, and to be in great estimation among the populace, by means of whom he rises to a good fortune and great prosperity in the world; if the ☽ is significatrix, it makes the Native ingenious and a lover of learning, seeking after the knowledge of most arts and sciences, chiefly the mathematics, geography, and navigation, by which he attains credit and reputation; he delights in journies and embassies, being of a mutable and inconstant humor and disposition.

General Effects produced by the Sextile and Trine of the Planets.

The sextile and trine of Saturn and Jupiter, if Saturn be significator, makes the Native wise, grave, sober, religious, and endows him with riches and treasures of this life, gives him the favor and acquaintance of the rich and great, or the Native becomes a merchant and gains considerably by it; if

Jupiter be significator, the Native is more propense to melancholy, is inclined to dig and delight in the earth, and follow husbandry; some estate, inheritance, or houses may fall to him; and he may be promoted to some ecclesiastical dignity for his worth, learning, and virtue, however Saturn shews cowardice.

The sextile or trine of Saturn and Mars, if Saturn is significator, his natural slowness and weariness turns into rashness and boldness, yet with a kind of temerity, he runs into precipitate actions, and adventures; it commonly gives martial preferment: if Mars is significator, the rashness and daringness of disposition is much abated, and the Native is guided by very deliberate councils; if he proves religious, (as such seldom do,) he is an absolute sectarian, following pertinaciously the sentiments of his own mind; it shews an estate in land or legacies.

The sextile or trine of Saturn and the Sun, if Saturn is significator, the Native has an austere countenance, light brown hair, large bones, not very fleshy, stoops a little in going, has a show of generosity and nobleness in his actions, but passionate and seeking revenge, yet without any great courage or valor if put to the trial, he probably may attain preferment at court; if the Sun is significator, the man is more corpulent, yet with a very decent body, and a full round face; giving to boasting and ostentation, willful and conceited, yet without any kind of malice, scarcely injuring any but himself, by too much extravagant expence and prodigality.

The sextile or trine of Saturn and Venus, if Saturn is significator, the Native is comely, having brown hair, a delighter in women's company, wasting his patrimony upon the female sex, scarcely leaving any estate behind for his successors, given over to pleasure and voluptuousness; if Venus be significatrix, the Native is modest, shamefaced, yet loving his belly well, very affable and courteous, and inclined to few vicious actions; gains by the dead, from ancient people, and from the fruits and profits of the earth; he has a good repute and conversation, and scarcely marries till after thirty years of age.

The sextile or trine of Saturn and Mercury, if Saturn is significator, the Native is conceited, full of whims, plots and contrivances, yet not often with effect, though carried on with a great deal of ingenuity; he loves curiosities, and is studious, subtle and reserved; if Mercury is significator, the Native is peevish, discontented and dejected in his own mind, has strange fancies, and is very willful, even sometimes to his own ruin; given to study arts and sciences, and finding out many curious inventions.

The sextile or trine of Saturn and the Moon, if Saturn is significator, the Native is willful, very changeable of disposition, subject to jealousy and mistrust, if Saturn be well fortified the Native becomes popular and gains much wealth and estimation by the common people; he also gains the favor of some eminent lady, and becomes famous in his generation; if the Moon is significatrix, the Native is cold by nature, and of an ill complexion, inclinable to sordid and mean actions, yet deliberate, and if he does ill, does it with pre-consideration; apt for invention, but very willful in all things, conceited, so that he thinks nothing well done but what he does himself.

The sextile or trine of Jupiter and Mars, if Jupiter is significator, it shews one of a noble and free disposition, bold, valiant and honorable, attempting and attaining brave and honorable exploits, generous to his friends, obliging to his enemies, yet desiring and endeavoring to rule, he is also resolute and subtle; if Mars is significator, the Native is of a large soul, cheerful and merry, of a jovial disposition, active, courageous, pious and very just, ennobled with valor, victory and virtue, one of good fame, obtaining the favor and good will of great and worthy persons.

The sextile or trine of Jupiter and the Sun, if Jupiter is significator, it shews a strong, tall, well proportioned body, of a fresh, ruddy complexion, a noble, generous, courageous soul, and of a magnanimous mind, attempting and achieving great and honorable things; or becomes the favorite of some King, Prince, or great person, and rises to the top of preferment; if the Sun is significator, the Native is born to honor and glory, and *quod capax*, arrives to the highest of all worldly felicities; he is a man of great spirit, performing beneficent and honorable actions; as Jupiter endows him with a fund of treasure, so the liberal spirit of the Sun makes him waste it by his too great generosity.

The sextile or trine of Jupiter and Venus, if Jupiter is significator, gives a tall and complete person, of a loving, pleasant, courteous disposition, kind to the female sex, of an exceeding good nature, and the patron of hospitality; it is the aspect of love, concord, agreement, good fortune and riches, the Native is prefered and rises to honor; if Venus be significatrix, the person is comely and lovely, one generously disposed, aiming only at things brave, honorable, virtuous and good: it is the aspect of virtue and piety, of honor, preferment and vast fortune in the world, the Native has the acquaintance of persons of the highest ecclesiastic order, and probably attains the like preferment himself.

The sextile or trine of Jupiter and Mercury, if Jupiter is

significator, it shews a just, virtuous man, ingenious, and of a very subtle wit; it is the aspect of eloquence, ingenuity and learning; the Native is affable, courteous, kind, mild, and a general lover of learning, one who by his worth and virtue may be the secretary or ambassador to some King or Prince; if Mercury is significator, it shews one very ingenious, and whose wit is mixt with virtue and honesty, of a deep understanding, profound wisdom, sound judgment, and successful in any enterprise; a person fit to be the counciller of a king, or manager of the affairs of a kingdom, or commonwealth, generous, free spirited and perfectly trusty.

The sextile or trine of Jupiter and the Moon, if Jupiter is significator, the Native is naturally good, just and virtuous, but of a very mutable mind, changing his opinion with the least persuasion; it is the aspect of popularity and general applause, and he becomes famous in his generation, and draws after him the love of the common people; he is loquacious, highly conceited of himself, fortunate by water, and women; if the Moon be significatrix, it shews one of a generous, noble, just mind, aiming at high and honorable things; he gains by the church, and churchmen, and is an exact observer of justice and truth, and a person who by his good nature would oblige the whole world.

The sextile or trine of Mars and Sun, if Mars is significator, the Native has rising fortune, proves great and eminent in the world, meets with preferment at court, or has the favor of some King or Prince; it is the aspect of honor and action, he is witty, ingenious and trusty; faithful even to his enemies, of a nimble wit, quick fancy, courteous and friendly, he may prove a General or Commander of an army: if the Sun is significator it is the aspect of valor and victory, the Native is of a great spirit and courageous, attains military honor and preferment, loves warlike exercises, appears a terror to his enemies, and rises far superior to his birth.

The sextile or trine of Mars and Venus, if Mars is significator it is the aspect of liberty and love, if Mars is out of his dignities, the Native is vicious above measure, loves gaming, women, and all manner of debauchery, he is ill-natured unless among his own party, and spends his fortune upon women, but if Mars is in his dignities it shews one witty, ingenious, a searcher out of mysteries, and one who shall gain a considerable fortune in the world: if Venus is significatrix, it is the aspect of pride, vanity and vain glory, the Native is comely, bold, rash, fearing nothing, aiming at great things and promising himself mountains, but perfecting little, and if Venus is weak, the person is debauched, and guilty of many lewd actions.

The sextile or trine of Mars and Mercury, if Mars is significator, it is the aspect of confidence and craft, the Native has a pregnant fancy, capable of any thing, prudent, bold, subtle, very ingenious, eloquent, and studious in arts and sciences, yet something hasty and subject to passion, which being over he is good humored again: if Mercury is significator, the Native is valiant, courageous, ingenious, a lover of military exercises, physic, surgery and chemistry, and may probably obtain a fortune by the fire, or dealing in martial commodities, the Native has generally a good opinion of himself.

The sextile or trine of Mars and Moon, if Mars is significator it is the aspect of loquacity and mutability, the Native gets by the common people, or by travel, often changing his residence, he is furious and rash, but as easily persuaded again to a complacent humor: if the Moon is significatrix the Native is passionate, ambitious of honor, aspiring to great things, and persuing them even to a precipice, and when attained they seldom continue with him, and the reason is because of the mutability and changeableness of his own nature and disposition, which beget a change of his fortunes.

The sextile or trine of Sun and Venus, if Sun is significator, it is the aspect of candor and generosity, the Native is exceedingly good-natured, of an heroic disposition, having nothing but gallantry in all his actions, he gets by women and has the favor of some rich lady, by whom he meets either with a good fortune or promotion, he is witty, ingenious and of an active fancy: if Venus is significatrix, it is the aspect of grandeur and magnificence; the Native meets with preferment at court or has the favor of some Prince, rises to great honor and glory in the world, of a good disposition, yet a little passionate, soon angry and quickly appeased again, of a free disposition, lofty, and a little given to pride and vain-glory, but a merry, sociable, good-humored person.

The sextile or trine of Sun and Mercury, if Sun is significator the Native is proud, ambitious, conceited, yet very courteous, and without any seeming resentment, passes over slight abuses, lest the taking notice of them, should be any prejudice to his grandeur, he is nimble witted, loquacious, and very good at invention: if Mercury is significator, the Native seems to rise in the world, entirely by his own wit and ingenuity, and no doubt will attain to a degree of honor above that of his birth and quality of his ancestors.*

* These two aspects are never found in any Nativity, and only take place by Direction of the Planets to these two aspects, and this holds good with respect both to Venus, and Mercury, and the Sun.

The sextile or trine of Sun and Moon, if Sun is significator, it is the aspect of credit and fame, makes the Native eminent in the world, born to great actions, and to perform extraordinary undertakings amongst the common people, he is cried up for a god among the multitude; if he be a priest or a physician he has a vast number of followers, he is pleasant, cheerful and good-natured: if the Moon is significatrix the Native is proud, ambitious, coveting after honor and glory, and generally born to enjoy a great measure thereof, but of a changeable disposition, and if the Moon be weak he falls into dishonor again.

The sextile or trine of Venus and Mercury, if Venus is significatrix the Native is very comely, witty, ingenious, subtle and of good nature, seldom guilty of any dishonorable action, a good orator, and of an aspiring fancy, yet seldom bringing things to perfection: if Mercury is significator, the Native is of an exceeding courteous nature, amorous, delighting in women's company, by whom he meets either with fortune or perferment, he is wise, prudent, just, a lover of learning, and endowed with many excellent parts, both natural and acquired, but if Mercury is weak and out of his dignities, the Native proves vicious instead of virtuous.

The sextile or trine of Venus and Moon, if Venus is significatrix, the Native will certainly arrive to honor, and be made great or rich by means of some eminent lady, he also has the estimation of the common people, and beeomes very popular; but is of an inconstant mind, by reason of which he performs no great things, he is a comely, engaging person, neat and genteel, and very apt to be taken with courtship: if the Moon is significatrix, the Native is very effeminate and amorous, of a gentle, obliging disposition, sober, just, and having the love of most women he converses with; but if the Moon is weak and otherwise unfortunate the Native inclines to vice.

The sextile or trine of Mercury and Moon, if Mercury is significator, the Native is witty and ingenious, a lover of novelties and all manner of new fancies and inventions, and mutable and changeable in his mind, resolution, and all undertakings, a man purely given to the art of dissimulation, though a pleasant companion: if the Moon is significatrix, the Native dives into arts and sciences, is subtle, crafty, covetous, a lover of himself, reserved and a little melancholy, if the Moou is strong he makes an excellent orator, a good advocate, and may be a secretary to some Prince or nobleman; if the Moon is weak, the Native is a compleat master of the art of deceiving.

General Effects produced by the Quartile and Opposition of the Planets.

The quartile or opposition of Saturn and Jupiter, if Saturn is significator, shews trouble and vexation, if the man be a sectarian he is persecuted by the clergy, molested and tormented, if Saturn falls in the Asc. 12th, 11th, 10th, or 9th Houses, the mischief falls in the fore-part of life, and the Native through his own folly loses a great part of his fortune or estate; if Jupiter is significator, it is the aspect of unceasing troubles and miseries, the Native is a continual loser, has great crosses, meets with contempt and disgrace, and was he born to a prince's estate, would be in danger of becoming a beggar; the Native is of a poor low spirit, cross, peevish, inactive, miserable and unfortunate in the world.

The quartile or opposition of Saturn and Mars, if Saturn is significator, it is the aspect of cruelty and murder, the Native is base, treacherous, envious, quarrelsome, rash, proud, scornful, unsociable, ungrateful, and a very ill-natured person, he has a good store of wit, but it is only to do mischief with, and he himself meets with many troubles by war; if Mars is significator, it is the aspect of treason and rebellion, the Native is willful, melancholy, subject to many lingering diseases, and will be in danger of an untimely death by falls, blows, treachery or poison; the Native also has an unhappy father, from whom he in part derives his turbulent spirit, which extremely hurts both himself and others.

The quartile or opposition of Saturn and the Sun, if Saturn is significator, it is the aspect of contempt and infamy, it shews danger of a violent death, and probably by the hand of justice, the Native aims at high and great things, but always misses his expectations, for his very attempts are only his ruin both of goods and estates, and may sometimes cost his life; the Native has a shew of boldness, courage and revenge, but his valour is but a vapor; if the Sun is significator, it is the aspect of treason and cowardice, the Native is inwardly very spiteful and malicious, false even to his dearest friend, studying revenge only by ways occult and cowardly; he is willful, fearful and timorous, yet impudently boasting of great things far above his sphere, capacity, understanding, or undertaking.

The quartile or opposition of Saturn and Venus, if Saturn is significator, it is the aspect of infamy and vice, the Native loves women, desires unlawful things, his carriage is rude, his condition base, given over to lusts and pleasures of the flesh, inclinable to nothing but vicious and sordid actions, prodigal in his expences, wasteful to the consumption of his

fortunes: if Venus is significatrix, it is the aspect of deformity and baseness, the Native is of a poor, base, low, timorous spirit, afflicted with the greatest of all misfortunes and catastrophes, loses by the fruits and products of the earth, and is indeed a gainer by nothing, it is the destruction of the Native.

The quartile or opposition of Saturn and Mercury, if Saturn is significator, it brings many evils from mercurial men and things, and from prosecution and law-suits, gives the Native an impediment in his speech, and makes him stutter or stammer, dulls the fancy, spoils the ingenuity, and makes the Native wholly bent upon mischief, wickedness, deceit, cheating and thieving; if Mercury is significator the Native is unfortunate in all his actions, and perpetually poor, of an evil, perverse, self-willed, envious, malicious, treacherous disposition, and it may be a murderer, for Saturn stirs up mercurial men to all manner of wickedness, he will be deceitful above measure, revengeful, of a dejected mind and bringing nothing to perfection.

The quartile or opposition of Saturn and Moon, if Saturn is significator, it is the aspect of travel and discontent; the Native is of an indifferent stature, dark or black hair, a disproportioned body, sometimes crooked, a traveller, wanderer, or vagabond, one having the ill-will and reproach of all people, and not undeservedly; a mere deceiver, and subject to great and manifold misfortunes from the vulgar: if the Moon is significatrix, it is the aspect of jealously, suspicion and mistrust, the Native is crooked both in person and mind, deceitful, malicious, strongly vicious, scandalous, and debauched, he is afflicted all the days of his life with innumerable troubles, crosses from adversaries, want of health, wasting of his estate, poverty, death of his mother, a short life and danger of a violent death.

The quartile or opposition of Jupiter and Mars, if Jupiter be significator, it is the aspect of fury and ingratitude; the Native is furious, rash, adventuresome, quarrelsome, and sometimes is vexed with malignant fevers, is in danger of a violent death by a wound or blow; a destroyer of himself, running headlong into precipices, desirous of rule, resolute, subtle, ill-natured, and perpetually ungrateful to all his friends, forgetting all their kindnesses: if Mars is significator, it is the aspect of atheism and infidelity, the Native wastes and destroys his substance and fortune, he is bold impudent and audacious, of a proud, scornful, haughty, insolent humor, a despiser of piety, religion and moral honesty, and is the abomination of all good men.

The quartile or opposition of Jupiter and Sun, if Jupiter is

significator, it is the aspect of arrogance and vain glory, the Native is riotous and profuse, given to all sorts of excess and prodigality, and loses his expectations; this configuration deprives him of all manner of honor and preferment, he is noble, lofty and brave, but only in outward appearance, and does nothing but to be seen of men: if the Sun is significator the Native wastes his patrimony, is lofty proud and pragmatical, despiser of the church and religion, and a great lover of pleasure and dissipation to his own infamy and ruin.

The quartile or opposition of Jupiter and Venus, if Jupiter is significator, it is the aspect of lust and fornication, the Native is given over to debauchery, more especially if Venus disposes of Jupiter; if Venus is lady of the 2nd, the Native wastes his estate and fortune, and will become indigent and poor, he follows base and lewd women, and gets an infamous name in the world: if Venus is significatrix the Native is proud, pragmatical, conceited, given over to carnal pleasures, despiser of piety, virtue, honesty and religion, one having a mere outside, a flatterer, deceiver, a waster of his own fortunes and patrimony; he will have many enemies in consequence of his own evil ways, chiefly among those of the church and people of an honest conversation.

The quartile or opposition of Jupiter and Mercury, if Jupiter is significator, it is the aspect of strife and contention, the Native will be involved in many troubles, perplexities and controversies, have many law-suits and incumbrances to his very great prejudice, and to the injury of his health as well as of his estate; he will be rash, humorsome, and very unstable in all his ways, being generally deceived in all his expectations: for Mercury thus afflicted, represents things wrong to the imagination; if Mercury is significator, it is the aspect of impudence and folly, the Native is overseen in all he undertakes, makes silly resolves and as foolishly repents of them to his prejudice, a repining simple person, given over to simplicity and absurdity, to his own utter undoing.

The quartile or opposition of Jupiter and Moon, if Jupiter is significator, it shews a wasting and loss of substance by many ordinary people, makes the Native mutable, foolish, without resolution, and one full of words, without any depth or reason in them, it shews also loss of credit and estimation, and brings many popular evils on him: if the Moon is significatrix, the Native is perplexed with unequal fortunes in the world, many crosses and afflictions befall him, false friends and deceitful confederates ensnare him, his substance is made a prey to merciless enemies, and himself the object of their cruelty.

The quartile or opposition of Mars and Sun, if Mars is

significator, it is the aspect of confusion and ruin, the Native aims at great and high things, but falls at last into an abyss of trouble and misery; he miscarries in all his undertakings, heaps upon himself torrents of sorrow, and forebodes a violent death, which if the Sun is Lord of the 6th, 7th, or 8th Houses, will be by means of a fall, or wound with a weapon, but if Lord of the 10th, by sentence of a judge: if the Sun is significator it is the aspect of vanity, fury and madness, it shews danger of the loss of an eye, violent death, or death by a malignant fever, the Native is rash in all his actions, squanders away his substance, and makes his life and fortunes miserable and desperate.

The quartile or opposition of Mars and Venus, if Mars is significator, the Native is given to vanity, lustful pleasures, and all manner of abominations of the flesh, gluttony, gaming and drinking, he is treacherous, ill-natured, and very unfortunate, when he marries, he commonly marries a woman of ill-fame, and is much given to boasting and ostentation: if Venus is significatrix, the Native is infinitely wicked, a thief, highwayman, or murderer, takes to all manner of vice and mischief, unfortunate both to himself and others, given to contention, and every kind of debauchery and wickedness.

The quartile or opposition of Mars and Mercury, if Mars is significator, the Native is bold, impudent, base, treacherous, deceitful above measure, even to his dearest friend, a despiser of GOD and all goodness, an unsettled, wretched creature, a shifter up and down, a thief, and one that lives by dangerous courses, one long retaining the sense of an injury, conceited, humorsome, difficult to be pleased, and unfortunate in all things; if Mercury is significator, the Native is guilty of many crimes, is of a very wicked and evil nature, likely to be guilty of murder or robbery, a breeder of contention and mischief, and a follower of almost every dishonorable practice.

The quartile or opposition of Mars and Moon, if Mars is significator, the Native is a perfect scold, given to railing and base language in almost all his discourse, is ungrateful and a forgetter of kindnesses, a wanderer, vagabond, detracter from other men's worth, stupid, and of a servile life, unfortunate in all his undertakings: if the Moon is significatrix, the Native will be in danger of losing one of his eyes, die a violent death, or be subject to many troubles, crosses and afflictions of fortune and justice, he is subject to hurts, wounds and other mischiefs, and is mutable, rash, passionate, prodigal, ambitious, malicious, treacherous and subject to innumerable miseries.

The quartile of Sun and Venus, if Sun is significator,

the Native lives in a dishonorable repute, receives many great troubles and misfortunes by means of women, he is bold, confident, proud, delighting in strife and opposition, unfortunate in most of his actions, and coming off in most of his undertakings with dishonor: if Venus is significatrix, the Native deludes himself with vanities and expectations of things which will never be, he is angry, passionate, and given up to pride, boasting and vain-glory, receives much hurt by great men, and sometimes may be in danger of his death by sentence of the judge.

The quartile of Sun and Mercury, if Sun be significator, the Native is subject to many losses and vexations by the law, or receives hurt by mercurial men and things, is unfortunate and has an impediment in his speech, deceitful, and not to be trusted: if Mercury is significator, the Native is of a middle stature, dull, swarthy complexion, tanned or sun-burnt, with light brown hair, full face and eye, high nose, choleric, proud and insolent, a boaster, ambitious, highly conceited of himself, and subject to the frowns of Princes and great men.

The quartile or opposition of Sun and Moon, if Sun is significator, the Native's fortune is mutable and unstable, he falls into contempt and reproach among the common people, and merits the hatred or displeasure of some great lady or person, he is a deceiver cheat, or impostor: if the Moon is significatrix, the Native is full faced, of a clear visage and light coloured hair, very ambitious of honor, which flies from him like a shadow pursued, one aiming at, and attempting many great things without success, but meets with many losses, crosses, and obstructions in his way to preferment.

The quartile or opposition of Venus and Mercury, if Venus is significatrix, the Native is subtle, crafty, deceitful, and given to thievery, he has an impediment in his speech, is of dull understanding, self-willed, cross, and indeed a perfect knave, one whose ill conditions and base mind, always keeps him poor: if Mercury is significator, the Native is dishonest, deceitful, slothful, given to indolence and ease, and delights in the company of lewd women, a mere dissembler, and one that spends his fortune in debauchery.

The quartile or opposition of Venus and Moon, if Venus is significatrix, it shews mutability, strife, debate, quarrelling, one of an ill tongue and a worse life, unfortunate in marriage and children, one indolent and lazy, subject to poverty and beggary; if the Moon is significatrix, the person is of an impudent, bold disposition, given up to lewdness, a mere vulgar, sordid creature, a wanderer and vagabond, deceitful, and subject to a multitude of misfortunes especially from and among women.

The quartile or opposition of Mercury and Moon, if Mercury is significator, the Native is mutable, in all his ways, foolish, arrogant, void of reason and good manners, loquacious and very much conceited of himself, he shall meet with many troubles and oppositions, and that from the common people, lose the favor of some noble women, and be reduced to an abject state of poverty. the frowns of a Prince are not so formidable as the hatred of the common people, for that so precipitates a man into distress that it prevents him for ever from rising again without some extraordinary assistance; if the Moon is significatrix, let the Native take what care and pains he will, he shall never do any thing commendable, it signifies a defect in the tongue, and makes the Native in every undertaking unfortunate, and for the most part exposed to contempt and infamy.

And though it be admitted that a student may make great advances in the knowledge of futurity, by acquiring an adequate comprehension of the nature and effects of the various configurations of the Celestial Bodies, and of their particular influences both benefic and malefic upon the human race, and though we may by this means attain to know that such and such events will certainly come to pass ; yet even this acquisition in the science must be considered very incomplete, without the ability of pointing out, by some fixed and certain rule, the precise time when these events shall happen.

This grand acquisition is therefore not obtained by any other mode, than by bringing up the arch of direction of each respective Significator in the Natives figure of birth, to the aspect which denotes each respective event; and this arch of direction is nothing more than the track or circle in the Heavens formed by the Significator, in moving from that particular point in the Heavens where found at birth, to the precise point where he forms the aspect with the promittor that indicates the event, which, upon his arrival there, is to happen. It is consequently apparent that if this tract or circle can be found, and its degrees and minutes accurately taken and reduced into common time according to the motion of the Sun, which regulates all our accounts of time, it will shew us at one view the exact time when the event according to the common course of nature, shall infallibly come to pass.

The Signification of Directions.

Ascendant to the conjuction quartile or opposition of Saturn, these are very bad directions, producing many obstuctions, as tedious lingering consumptions, green sicknes, agues, rheums, coughs, if not death itself, a general dulness

or stupidity possesses the whole body, with vexations, mischief by old people, loss of reputation and estate.

Asc. to the sextile or trine of Saturn, whenever these directions occur in any Geniture the Native becomes more solid and sober than formerly, he grows acquainted with elderly people, and proves advantageous to him in commerce; or otherwise he is concerned in buildings, husbandry, wills, or legacies of some deceased person; it denotes gain advantage, etc.

Asc. to the conjunction, sextile or trine of Jupiter, either of these directions indicate extraordinary respect, wealth and prosperity, it raises credit, esteem and riches, prosperity in all his affairs, and brings him into reputation with most eminent persons where he lives.—To a scholar it denotes some degree of preferment, or some valuable benefice; and if capable may marry.—If Jupiter is strong in the radix it is more beneficial.

Asc. the quartile or opposition of Jupiter, if either operates, it denotes a distempered body, blood corrupt; a pleurisy, small pox or measels, it is attended with quarrels and contentions, sometimes with Clergymen to his prejudice and estate.

Asc. to the conjunction, quartile or opposition of Mars, these are very evil directions, and indicate many miseries of body, sometimes death, plague, boils, small-pox, bloody-flux, giddiness, madness, public accusations, and sometimes sentenced to death: makes him quarrelsome; he must not undertake duels; it is attended with hurts from horses, iron, stone, gun-shot, sword or fall; if Mars is Lord of the Medium-cœli it is attended with abundance of infamy; and if Lord of the 2nd, he wastes his substance in a strange manner.

Asc. to the sextile or trine of Mars inclines to delight in the use of arms, or gives him some honorable post in a military employment, if a student he is addicted to Chemistry; in the nativities of women it frequently produces marriage, especially if he is Lord of the 7th, and if Mars is Lord of the 2nd, it notably increases the substance.

Asc. to the conjunction, sextile or trine of the Sun, is attended with fame and reputation; if lord of the 10th, it raises to favor of some Prince, or noble person, it often produces pains in the head, sore eyes, sometimes it lays open secret concerns in life.

Asc. to the sextile or trine of the Sun, is very eminent, it produces a great deal of felicity to any Native (who will be famous,) as honor, profitable places, and employments; if Lord of the Medium Cæli, gain and an increase of substance, it makes him happy in all his affairs, and produces an honor-

able marriage to either man or woman, if the Sun is dignified in the 7th House.

Asc. to the quartile or opposition of the Sun, will involve the Native in many troubles and vexations, he loses his employments; is basely degraded, he consumes his patrimony, poverty attends him, quarrels, suits at law, subject to sore eyes, if not to blindness, acute diseases often ensue, and if the Sun is Lord of the 8th, death frequently happens.

Asc. to the conjunction, sextile or trine of Venus, is good, it denotes abundance of pleasure and felicity, he is generally beloved of women, it propagates marriages, and rarely fails if capable thereof; he marries a virtuous wife, (if she is so signified in the Radix,) or if formerly married, he may now expect a child; he finds his kindred very kind to him, lives contentedly and is well respected; it also increases his substance, and in an eminent manner if Venus governs the 2nd House.

Asc. to the quartile or opposition of Venus, denotes he is careless; addicted to voluptuousness and rioting; grows heedless of reputation, consumes his patrimony, and spends his estate in drunkenness, whoredom, etc., whence proceeds a ruined estate, obnoxious infirmities to his body, as surfeits, French-pox, etc., with other disasters if married; under this direction jealousies often rise between man and wife.

Asc. to the conjunction, sextile or trine of Mercury, inclines to ingenuity, under either of these directions the Native is industrious after learning, oratory, and the mathematics, he searches into occult arts and sciences; he delights in travelling, merchandising, or more than ordinary concerned in contracts, bargains, etc., if Mercury is Lord of the Asc. and strong in a Nativity, hardly any thing is too difficult to be attained under this direction, therefore they generally prove the very top of their profession.

Asc. to the quartile or opposition of Mercury, are very mischievious significations, denoting many troubles, losses and crosses, it stirs up adversaries against him, involves him in controversies in law, he is often vexed, it denotes arrests, informations, imprisonments, knavish lawyers, and cheating servants, he is disturbed in his head or brain and sometimes a phrenzy.

Asc. to the conjunction, sextile or trine of the Moon, these directions will produce much felicity, success in fortune, and content in mind, especially if the Moon is strong and well beheld in the Radix, it produces acceptations among the female sex, in conversation and courtship: and frequently produces marriage; in a masculine geniture it inclines the Native to travel into foreign parts, but if it is to a conjunction

and the Moon Lady of the 8th, and posited in a watery sign, it denotes death by drowning.

Asc. to the quartile or opposition of the Moon, denotes diseases of the body, as phlegmatic watery humors, fluxes, or rheum in the eyes, chiefly in the left, subject to surfeits through gluttony, or too much drinking, in danger of robbing, strifes and contentions attend him, with losses at sea, if he trades there, matters generally go cross with him, and meets with affronts and disgraces; if to the opposition of the Moon, it implies the same circumstances before mentioned, that is if Lady of the 8th, and posited in a watery sign, it indicates death by drowning.

M. C. the conjunction, quartile or opposition of Saturn, these are malignant directions, injurious whenever they occur to the name and reputation of any Native, he is arrested, imprisoned, and ruined, if it falls in the 12th, or if Saturn is posited there. If Saturn be Lord of the 10th, the conjunction of Saturn then denotes advancement in life, but attended with labor and difficulties, etc., the Lord of the 10th, to conjunction of 10th, is always good.

M. C. to the sextile or trine of Saturn, raises him to fame and reputation, produces him the favor of sober and grave elderly people, he gains money, grows wealthy, and if a tradesman, gives him employ; however according to his capacity it advances him into esteem and honor.

M. C. to the conjunction, sextile or trine of Jupiter, raises the Native in an eminent manner, or is favored from his superiors, he succeeds well, it also gives him great comfort and felicity with abundance of prosperity.

M. C. to the quartile or opposition of Jupiter, denotes vexation, he is plagued with lawyers, or clergymen, wastes his substance by associating himself with cheating solicitors, pettifoggers, etc., religious people become his enemies, and all things go cross and untoward.

M. C. to the conjunction, quartile or opposition of Mars, shews a multitude of miseries to attend him; if Mars rules the 8th, it threatens death by sentence of a Judge, it also plunges him into many misfortunes, both in body, mind, and estate, he is engaged in quarrels, tumults and uproar; if an highwayman he is hanged for thieving; if a tradesman he becomes a bankrupt, and if a courtier he loses his place and honor.

M. C. to the sextile or trine of Mars, promotes his reputation, and gives him fame, or some martial exploit for fighting, fencing, and gains some preferment by war; he delights in hunting and such like diversions, it makes him exquisite and ingenious in his profession and re putation, for he gain

thereby, and if Mars rules the 7th, he marries; if a woman her marriage is certainly effected.

M. C. to the conjunction, sextile or trine of the Sun, is a glorious signification, for it raises the Native unto favor with great persons, and prefered to honor, or an eminent place, he rises in estimation among his neighbours; it shews if capable, an honorable marriage; if he be a Prince he attains a Kingdom, he is bountiful and performs much grandeur.

M. C. to the quartile or opposition of the Sun, under these directions he is degraded, loses his office and preferment on a sudden, with loss of estate by fire, his credit and reputation is blasted, and if the Radix threatens a violent death, it will be by sentence of a judge.

M. C. to the conjunction, sextile or trine of Venus is a pleasant signification, will produce health of body, content of mind and an increase of riches and honor, and if capable marries, during the time of its effects he is addicted to mirth and keeping women's company, and is often raised thereby, he is prosperous in his undertakings, and gives much felicity.

M. C. to the quartile opposition of Venus, this subjects the person to ignominy and derision, with a breach in his reputation, he is subject to lewd women's company, whereby much strife and contention is produced, he becomes debauched and lewd in his conversation, and is addicted to drunkenness and other debaucheries; if married it stirs up jealousies and discontent between man and wife, and renders him obnoxious to civil society.

M. C. to the conjunction, sextile or trine of Mercury inclines the Native to study and learning, is curious to search into arts and sciences as the law, logic, and various languages, he undertakes something pertaining to writings or accompts, and is employed in some embassy, or merchandising, he performs some notable project, and advances himself by it.

M. C. to the quartile or opposition of Mercury, under these directions he is plunged into quarrels and contentions, some pettifogger or perjured informer vexes him; he is perplexed with law-suits, abused by fale accounts, lying reports, and loses his credit and reputation by meaus of some mercurial person

M. C. to the conjunction of the Moon, excites him to be fickle and wavering in his mind, he is inclined to marry, and if capable certainly effects it if the Moon is Lady of the 7th, it raises his fame and is applauded by common people, he also travels into foreign parts, if the Moon governs the 9th House.

M. C. to the sextile or trine of the Moon, these directions are of the same nature as the foregoing besides he gains the

favor of some eminent Gentlewoman, and advances himself, by this means he obtains some eminent employment; he thrives and is much respected, and well spoken of in general.

M. C. to the quartile or opposition of the Moon foments differences, strifes and contentions, he falls into disgrace, and disrespect, he is also abused by the vulgar or common people and loses his substance by trading at sea, commotions and quarrels arise between husband and wife, loss of reputation by the means of base women, and it is probable may do something to deserve it, or to merit the displeasure of a judge.

The Mid Heaven to the pleiades, indicates many misfortunes. wranglings and contentions occasioned by women, with sudden and unexpected controversies, sometimes murder, or imprisonment, in some genitures sudden preferment, but an unhappy end attending it.

The Mid Heaven to the Præsepe will produce almost the same effects as the Pleiades.

The Mid Heaven to Aldebarren denotes the Native is addicted to many ingenious practices, has success in chemical and martial performances, gains money thereby, and the conversation of soldiers.

The Mid Heaven to Pollux promises good success in all martial affairs, he gains honor, or among soldiers, he is ambitious, imperious and addicted to quarrelling.

The Mid Heaven to the two Assellus promises advancement to a military employment, the Native is highly esteemed and respected, and gains honor by what he undertakes.

The Mid Heaven to Cor Scorpio, or Cor Leonis advances the Native to power, and promotion by means of some eminent person, it is probable he increaseth his estate and promotes his reputation.

The Mid Heaven to Spica Virginis, produces a time of felicity, with some advancement in the Church; if a tradesman, success in his employ, unexpected honors and preferment are confered upon him.

The Mid Heaven to the South Ballance, denotes trouble and loss of reputation on a sudden: if this Star happens to be in the 11th, an acquaintance deserts him; if in the 12th, he is arrested and villified.

The Sun to the conjunction, quartile or opposition of Saturn shews many sorrows, troubles and contentions chiefly by the means of elderly persons, his health is obstructed with melancholy agues, black choler, &c., he is subject to falls from horses, or high places; pestered with thieves, or thievish servants, and a general disturbance both in body and mind.

The Sun to the sextile or trine of Saturn signifies felicity, and advantage to attend the Native in husbandry, buildings,

or by conversation with elderly persons, it inclines him to sobriety and gravity, he meets with success in his undertakings, and obtains wealth.

The Sun to the conjunction, sextile or trine of Jupiter, denotes abundance of comfort and felicity, with health of body, quietness of mind, and an abundant increase of substance, even as it were miraculous, it gives honor, office, or some preferment according to his capacity; if a Clergyman, some dignity in the Church; it frequently produces marriage; sometimes, if capable, it blesseth the Native with a son or much comfort from him, in short it raises the Native in an eminent manner.

The Sun to the quartile or opposition of Jupiter shews vexations to attend the Native, he is injured by lawyers, or religious disciples who impede his affairs more especially if Jupiter is Lord of the 2nd, but if Sun or Jupiter be Lord of the Asc. it impairs health.

The Sun to the conjunction, quartile or opposition of Mars is a malevolent direction, it shews misery and vexation, sickness invades the body with acute diseases, as strong fevers, small pox, measles, pestilential diseases in the head and eyes, pleurisies, wounds, scalding, burning by fire, lighting, gunshot, etc., in danger of a stab, or poison, and deprived of his senses; if Mars is Lord of the 4th, 6th, or 8th Houses, and also afflicted it imports death by wicked persons, as robbers, thieves and false informations.

The Sun to the sextile or trine of Mars denotes marriage to a woman if Mars is Lord of the 7th, and the same to a man; if Mars is Lord of the 10th, it gives honor and preferment, especially with arms or military concerns; it shews courage and bravery, and brings him into reputation with Kings and Princes, or eminent Commanders; if he be a mechanic he is successful in his employ, and is good to all degrees of men according to their capacity.

The Sun to his own sextile, produces peace and felicity, profit, gain, prosperity, and is advanced to dignity and renown, if the Radix corresponds therewith, and it also falls in a benevolent House.

The Sun to his own quartile, indicates abundance of sorrows, miseries, and many maladies are attending, which renders him uneasy whereby he desires to be dissolved that he may return to his rest.

The Sun to the conjunction, sextile or trine of Venus, these directions indicate a time of pleasure and recreations: he diverts himself in conversation with women, in plays, music, dancing, banqueting and merriment, and not troubled with cares except in love matters; if Sun or Venus rules the

7th, he obtains an advancement of stock considerably; it also imports a sound healthful body, with marriage if the person is single.

The Sun to the quartile or opposition of Venus, shews a barren time, no hopes of issue that year, much difficulty to obtain a wife; it denotes contention with the female sex; he suffers an ill name, and loses his reputation by some means, if not his estate; it shews him to be very impudent, addicted to lust and wantonness, so that he incurs infamy, scandal and disgrace, the opposition seldom happens.

The Sun to the conjunction, sextile or trine of Mercury, denotes a time of activity and business, the Native is inclined to study, he is much esteemed and advanced for his abilities and learning; it produces in him many admirable conceptions, and is busy in accounts, purchasing books, etc., but if only to the conjunction of Mercury, then he is plunged into law-suits and controversies, plagued with knaves, thieves, and false informers, and also loss in travelling.

The Sun to the quartile of Mercury, denotes many accusations or informations against the Native; disgrace and odious calumnies are thrown upon him, and he meets with oppositions in all his undertakings.

The Sun to the conjunction of the Moon, impairs the health, he is oppressed with phlegm and too much moisture, whereby the head and stomach is obstructed; the eyes are prejudiced, and sometimes blindness ensue, he is fickle and wavering in his mind, inclining to travel and theft, and consumes his substance; it is not good to marry under this direction, unless the Moon is well posited in the figure of birth.

The Sun to the sextile or trine of the Moon, raises the Native's fame; makes him popular, being admired by the vulgar, he advances by means of his acquaintance and employment, he undertakes journies, or is sent on embassies, and is busy in matters relating to women; if capable, enters into the marriage state.

The Sun to the quartile or opposition of Moon, under this direction he incurs the displeasure and malice of the common people, or particularly women; he meets with losses at sea and land, is degraded and loses his employment; he is inclined to idle, drunken, vicious courses, from whence diseases ensue, as the small pox, measles, megrims, apoplexies, distempers in his eyes, or a violent fever, and if married causes great differences between him and his wife, and also liable to be attacked by thieves.

The Moon to the conjunction, quartile or opposition of Saturn, afflicts the Native with phlegm, melancholy and other cold diseases, as palsies, dropsies, quartan agues, apoplexies,

and sometimes fevers; he is traduced and ill spoken of by the clownish people, villified and cheated by servants, and others he deals with, he also loses by cattle and husbandry, and some weakness attends the eye sight.

The Moon to the sextile or trine of Saturn, denotes the Native will thrive and obtain money by dealing with sober people, and those that are of a Saturnine nature; it is advantageous to be concerned in buildings, or tilling of land, and also sea, coal, cattle, etc.

The Moon to the conjunction, sextile or trine of Jupiter, denotes health of body, and a plentiful addition of felicity, with ease to the mind, he becomes acquainted with persons of a good reputation, both in Church and State; it advances him, if he is in a low degree, and increases his estate, all will succeed and prosper in his undertakings.

The Moon to the quartile or opposition of Jupiter, denotes vexations and crosses to overtake him, he is contentious with Clergymen, or religious pretenders, or perhaps may imbibe some strange heteredox principles in religion, which may occasion it; he is degraded and suffers in his fame and reputation, neither do matters succeed to his expectations.

The Moon to the conjunction, quartile or opposition of Mars, foreshews mischief to the body and mind, and also in his public and private affairs; his body is afflicted with choleric humors, a sharp fever, or some other malignant malady, as the plague, French-pox, stone, or gravel in the kidnies, botches and boils, also in danger by fire, iron, or fury of some beast; sometimes it produces a phrenzy, or death itself, all his concerns go cross, and his reputation is beset.

The Moon to the sextile or trine of Mars, excites the Native to courage, valor and boldness; he is busy about military affairs, or with horses: these directions advance his fortune, or if a military man, it gives him some preferment, if a tradesman it denotes a good trade, and promotes his acquaintance, he overcomes his adversaries in quarrels, duels, and law-suits; and in a masculine Geniture frequently produces marriage.

The Moon to the conjunction, sextile or trine of the Sun, denotes profitable and honorable acquaintance; he advances himself by the means of women, who are superior to him, it sometimes gives marriage, and as he advances himself he becomes popular, and is respected by most where he inhabits, and is advanced to places of trust, or profit, in a Kingly Geniture these confer a Crown, and makes him happy in his subjects, it also shews a healthful constitution unless it be to a conjunction of the Sun, it then often produces a fever and sometimes death.

The Moon to the quartile or opposition of the Sun, denotes troubles and vexations are concomitant to the Native; some eminent person that had formerly been his friend, now becomes his professed enemy, it behoves him to beware of popular tumults and seditions; he consumes his substance, and loses his trade, or employment; it also brings afflictions to his body, as coughs, cholics, fevers, torments in the belly, hurt to the eye sight, and the like maladies.

The Moon to the conjunction, sextile or trine of Venus, indicates abundance of felicity, he delights in mirth and jolity, as plays, dancing, pastimes, wholly inclined to pleasure, free from all cares except love matters, for it often imports marriage; he is healthful in body, and all matters relating to substance succeeds well.

The Moon to the quartile or opposition of Venus is an evil direction, under which he gets disrepute and a scandalous name; he is prejudiced by women, follows idle and lewd company, leads a loose idle life, turns drunkard, wastes his estate among debauched women, whereby he subjects himself to abundance of infirmities, and all sorts of veneral diseases; sometimes marriage, but unhappiness.

The Moon to the conjunction, sextile or trine of Mercury, denotes to the conjunction, he is engaged in disputes and controversies, and if Mercury is weak, gains no credit, for he is inclined to lying, and addicted to knavish actions, as forging writings, etc., perhaps he proves an ingenious thief, or pickpocket, but if Mercury is strong, he follows his studies close, and is employed in writings, etc., if to the sextile or trine he gains by merchandising, keeping a school, or the mathematics, in short he gains reputation by his study and diligence.

The Moon to the quartile or opposition of Mercury, denotes trouble and controversy to attend the Native, he gains much envy and malice with lawyers and solicitors: is concerned in cozening and knaveries; in the law he declines civil honest company; is suspected and questioned about coining of money, he is also pestered with law-suits, false accounts, etc., whereby his substance is much injured; and if Mercury is Lord of the 4th, or 8th Houses, he is sentenced to death, for other crimes, etc.

The ♁ to the sextile or trine of Saturn, denotes an increase of estate by building, mines, and husbandry; he gains by elderly persons, or a legacy will be bequeathed him.

The Sun or Moon to the Twelve Houses.

To the 1st, discovers his private enemies, and gains upon them, he is absolute, aiming at rule and command in his family.

To the 2nd, is addicted to expences; but if the fortunes assist, it increases his estate.

To the 3rd, undertakes many pleasant journies.

To the 4th, busy in buildings, or in husbandry, and to good purpose if the Fortunes are there; but if the Infortunes the contrary.

To the 5th, mirth and jollity.

To the 6th, gain by small cattle, and his servants, yet liable to sickness.

To the 7th, quarrels and contentions are likely to incommode the Native.

To the 8th, busy about the wife's portion, or about the dead, and sometimes it denotes the Natives own death.

To the 9th, is inclined to travel, and to cross the seas to see Countries abroad, if the Sign on the 9th, be moveable and watery.

To the 10th, advancement now offers itself, or propagates his reputation, according to his situation.

To the 11th, gives new acquaintance, and his hopes meet with success.

To the 12th, denotes sorrow and a discontented face, he is in fear of a person, or is abused by malicious persons, who prove prejudicial to him.

Judgments to be Inferred from Transits.

Transits of good Planets by good places or promissors, signify good, but by evil places, evil; and so contrariwise; and whatsoever we have before said of Directions, the same things in an inferior degree, are to be understood of Transits, with this difference, that whereas Directions signify the good or evil to be eminent, Transits signify much smaller matters of the same kind; and whereas the force or effects of a Direction lasts long, the effects of a Transit is generally over as soon as the Transit, the one oftentimes lasting years, the other but days or weeks at most.

But the Transits of the superiors, as Saturn, and Mars ought well to be considered, for they never pass without obvious effects, which often lasts a whole year, let them be good or evil: for if they be Lords of an evil House, or ill-posited in the Radix, if they Transit the Asc. the conjunction, quartile, opposition of its Lord, they threaten life; if the 2nd, or its Lord, the substance; if the 3rd, or its Lord, journies; if the 4th, or its Lord, danger to the father, or loss of inheritance; if the 5th, or its Lord, loss by gaming, and death of children; if the 6th, or its Lord, sickness or death of the wife; if the 8th, or its Lord, loss of substance, because they

cast their opposition unto the 2nd; if the 9th, or its Lord, loss at sea, robbing by land, envy of Churchmen; if the 10th, or its Lord, the Kings displeasure if a Courtier, but loss of trade if a tradesman; if the 11th, or its Lord, evil friends, or their affliction, the loss of hopes; if the 12th, or its Lord, death, and loss by cattle.

Observe also in the Ephemeris what day of every month any of the Planets by their bodies pass by any of the Cusps of the Houses of the Radical figure, or what degree wherein any of the seven Planets, the ☌, ☽, or ⊕ was in at the birth: you must also observe when they behold any of those Cusps, or the degrees wherein the Planets where, either with a sextile, quartile, or trine dexter or sinister, or opposition, etc. The Transit of Jupiter or Venus by the degree ascending of the Radix, imports the Native to be that day healthful, chearful, very successful in his affairs and well disposed, for the Asc. signifies the actions of the body, etc., if Jupiter or Venus transit the Cusp of the 2nd House, that day is intimated an apt day to procure in monies, or to purchase any commodity. If they or either of them Transit the Cusp of the 3rd House, or behold it with a good Aspect, they promise felicity that day from kindred or good neighbours; it also shews a favorable time to begin any journey. The same must be understood ot the other Houses.

If Mars Transit the degree ascending, he moves the Native to choler or passion for two or three days, or gives the occasion whereby he is stirred up to wrath, etc.

If Saturn Transit the degree Ascending, he excites the Native to gravity, soberness, melancholy, etc.; and those days of the year are generally reputed fortunate, when either Jupiter, or Venus, or Sun, or Moon are in sextile, or trine to the degree Ascending or Culminating, or to their own places in the Radix, and those days are said to be unsuccessful, when either Saturn or Mars Transit the degrees Ascending or Culminating, or the places of Jupiter, Venus, Sun, Moon, or ☌, or beholds them by a quartile or opposition aspect.

The Transits of Moon, discover all things whether good or evil, which happen to a man daily, through the course of his life; her application to, or transits of ⚹'s and △'s, shew good; of □'s and ☍'s, evil, concerning all those things signified by that House in which the Transit is made; where, if she be significatrix, the good or evil will partly fall upon the things signified by her, according to the House she was Lady of, or posited in the Radix; but if not, the good or evil will fall upon those things signified by the significator which is Transited.

Judgments to be inferred from Revolutions.

The judgments of a Revolution are easy to be determined, by considering in what House or Sign in the Revolution the Radical Significators are posited; for according to those Revolutional positions and configurations we are to judge. So that if the Lord of the 2nd House be in the 3rd, it shews gain to come either by travel, kindred or neighbours; and if it be also in sextile or trine with the Lord of the 3rd, in the Radix the same; if with the Lord of the 4th, by the father; if in the Medium Cœli, or in conjunction, sexile, or trine with his Radical Lord, gain by trade, office, preferment, Noblemen, or eminent persons. Hence it appears, that the significator of substance in a Revolution, is not Lord of the 2nd, in a Revolution, but the Lord of the 2nd, in the Radix; the significator of lands is not the Lord of the 4th, in a Revolution, but the Lord of the 4th, in the Radix; the same is to be understood of the rest; but if the same Sign which Ascended Radically, Ascends in a Revolution, its effects will be the more firm, because the Significators are the same; the like, if the same Planets which were Lords of the several Houses in the Radix, be Lords of the same in the Revolution though they possess not the same Sign.

Whatsoever good or evil is presaged unto the Native, either by Direction, Transit or Revolution, we are to measure the greatness thereof, according to the Radical strength of the Significators, compared with their strength or fortitude at the time of Direction; where if they are Radically strong, the good or evil will be great and permanent, and this is more confirmed if they be also strong at the time of Direction or Transit; if Radically weak, the good or evil will but meanly manifest itself; and scarcely at all, if weak at the time of the Direction or Transit; but if Radically weak, and strong at the time of the Direction or Transit, the effects thereof may appear much beyond the expectations of the Native, but will not be very durable.

PTOLOMY'S SYSTEM.

Having now introduced the *Argolian* system and briefly explained the significaton of Directions, revolutions and transits, it might here be of the greatest utility, to give the young learner the rules laid down by the great *Ptolomy*.

Of the Space of Life.

Of the events which happen after birth, the chiefest is about the space of life: for how shall any other event which

befals after the birth, be considered in him that doth not at all arrive to that age of life? therefore the doctrine concerning the space of life is chief to all; and this is not simple nor easy, but is diversely taken from the dominion of the principal places: and the manner which chiefly pleaseth us, is thus. That the whole concerning the space of life, depends on the Aphetic places, * rulers thereof and disposition of Anaretic places.

Of the Prorogatory Places.

First, the Prorogatory Places are to be supposed those in which the Star is that must assume the Dominion of Prorogation, both the Sign which is about the Horoscope from five degrees ascending above the Horizon, unto the twenty-five remaining degrees, which being angular succeed, and also the sextile Dexter of those thirty degrees which are of the good Demon, and the quartile of the Mid-heaven above the earth, and the trine, which is called God, and the opposite of the west. And among these again are preferred as stronger and more powerful, first, they which are in the Mid-heaven above the earth, then, they in the east, next to those, they in the Succeedant to the Mid-heaven, then the west, and lastly, they which precede the Mid-heaven. For whatsoever is under the earth, is not fit for such a dominion; besides what comes into light with the Ascendant.

Whatsoever House of the twelve above the earth, hath no familiarity with the Horoscope, is not proper to be taken; and that which riseth before it which is called the evil Demon, † seeing that it not only declines, but also hurts the in-

* The Aphetic, Hylegiacal, and Prorogatory places are the same; the first from the Greek, the second from the Hebrew, and the last from the Latin; and are the places whence the Apheta, Hyleg, or Prorogater (which are all one) is taken; and the Anaretic Places or Stars, are such as are killing.

† By the good Demon is to be understood the 11th House; and by that which is called God, the 9th House; and that called the evil Demon, the 12th House: and the degrees here mentioned are not those of the Ecliptic, but of the Equinoctial or Equator, of which the Space of every one of the 12 Houses contain 30, and so in the whole the 12 make up 360, in every latitude.

Observe, the Prorogatory places are, first, from the 5 degrees next and immediately above the cusp of the Ascendant, to the 25 degrees next below it, which may be computed by Oblique Ascension.

And as in the Ascendant, so a Planet in the 5 degrees next preceding the cusp of the 2nd, (though actually in the Ascendant,) yet hath its influence in the 2nd, and therefore those 5 degrees are not Prorogatory. The like is to be understood of the 10th, 9th, and 7th.

But in the 11th House, the Prorogatory place doth not exceed the middle of the House towards the 12th, which middle is easily computed by adding half the Semi-diurnal Arc, to the Right Ascension of the M. C and where that ends is the middle of the 11th House, and the part beyond that is not Prorogatory.

fluence of those Stars that are in it flowing from them on the earth, for it disturbs, and as it were destroys the thick and dark vapor proceeding from the moisture of the earth, whereby they appear contrary to nature, both in color and magnitude.

Of the Part of Fortune.

The ⊕, or Lunar Horoscope is computed from the intercepted degrees between the ☉ and ☽, and hath equal degrees from the Horoscope, according to the following Signs. This therefore, is always computed by night and day, that what proportion and configuration the ☉ hath to the Horoscope, the same hath the ☽ to ⊕, that it may be as a Lunar Horoscope.

Besides what the Greek or Latin Translation of Alatius hath here, concerning the Part of Fortune, Cardan adds, "But we ought also to observe which of the Luminaries is more than the other in consequence of the Signs; for if the Moon be, we ought to add towards the consequence of the Signs, the number of degrees from the Horoscope; but if the Moon be towards the precedent more than the Sun, to subtract it." The meaning of which is, that from the New Moon to the Full, the difference is to be added to; from Full Moon to the New, to be subtracted from the Horoscope.

Governor of the Aphetic Place.

The four principal places to be taken as Governors of the Aphetic, are those of the Sun, the Moon, the Horoscope, and the Part of Fortune. Of these again let the Sun be preferred by day, if he be in the Aphetic places; if he be not, let the Moon: if she be not, that Planet shall be preferred that hath most titles of Dominion in the place of the Sun, the preceding conjunction, and the Horoscope; that is, when he hath dominion three ways or more, in one of the mentioned places; for all the ways of Dominion are five. But if there be none such, the Horoscope shall be taken.

By night the Moon shall be preferred, if she be likewise in Aphetical places, but if she be not, the Sun shall, if he be; and if he be not, that Planet which hath more Prorogatives of Dominion in the place of the Moon, the preceding Full Moon, and the Part of Fortune; and if there be none such,

Secondly, these things being premised when two or more significations shall happen to be equally strong, and otherwise contend for dominion of Prorogation, (as it sometimes happens) so that it is hard to judge who is the true Prorogator that takes place first, that is in the Mid heaven, next that in the Ascendant, then those in the 11th; next those in the 7th, and lastly that in the 9th.

the Horoscope shall be taken, if a conjunction preceded: but if it was a Full Moon, the Part of Fortune.

If both the Lights or the Ruler of the proper condition are in Aphetic places, he shall be taken that is more principal: but if the Ruler of the Lights possess the more principal place, and hath Prorogative of Dominion in both conditions, he alone shall be preferred to others.

The Ways of Prorogation.

The Prorogator being so determined, we ought to admit two ways of Prorogation: one of which is made only on the consequent Signs, under that which is called Actinobolia, or a projection of Rays, when the Prorogator is in Oriental places, that is, in the places from the Mid-heaven to the Horoscope. This therefore we ought to assume, and not only this which is to consequent Signs, but also to the precedent Signs; according to that which is called Horimea, which is when the Apheta is in places declining from the Mid-heaven.

These things being so, there are interficient degrees according to the Prorogation which is made to the precedent Signs. The degree of the Occidental Horizon only is interficient, because it destroys the Lord of Life. But the other degrees of the Stars so occurring or testifying, subtract them from, or add them to the collected numbers, until the Prorogator is set: but observe also that they do not kill, because they are not carried to the Aphetic place, but that rather to their places.

The Benefics therefore add, and the Malefics subtract; but Mercury is adapted to those by whom he is beheld. The situation of the degree of each, indicates the number of addition or subtraction; for how many shall be the Horary times of the degree of each, such shall be the number of years; but by day, the times of the diurnal parts, by night the nocturnal must be considered; but this ought to be observed when they are in the Ascendant. * Afterwards to subtract according to the proportion of distance, until they coming to the west, nothing remains.

But the places of the Malefics, Saturn and Mars, kill according to the Prorogation made to the following Signs, when they either meet bodily, or cast their rays from any where, whether it be quartile or opposition, and sometimes in sextiles, proceeding from Signs obedient or beholding, because of their equipolence, and also a quartile configuration from

* But says Carden, when his number is in the Ascendant it ought to be kept whole.

the following Signs to the Aphetic place; and also a sextile evilly affected, when it is in Signs of Long Ascension; yea and besides, the trine in Signs of Short Ascension, kill, as will the solar place, if the Moon be Hyleg: and the rencounters made in such a Prorogation kill or save, because such occurses are carried to the Aphetic place direct.

These places are not always Anaretic, but only when they are evilly affected; and their Anaretic part is impeded, when it falls in the terms of a Benefic, or if any of the Benefics cast a quartile, trine, or opposition, to the very Anaretical point, or to those which follow it. In Jupiter not above 12 degrees, and in Venus not above 8. Or if both the body of the Prorogator and the occurrent part have not both the same latitude.

Therefore when the Assisting or Anaretic Rays are found two or more on each side, you must observe which is strongest in power and number; in number when some exceed others in multitude; in power when the assisting or killing Stars are some of them in proper places, and others not; and chiefly when some of them are Oriental, and some Occidental: for generally none of these that are under the Sun's beams, are to be left either to kill or save, unless when the Moon is Apheta, the place of the Sun afflicted by some Malefics joined to it, and receiving freedom from none of the Benefics, causeth death.

The number of years arising from the distance between the Aphetic and Anaretic place, is not taken simply and indiscreetly, always from the Ascensions of the times of each Planet, but then only when the Orient possesseth the Prorogation, or some other which ariseth in the Oriental Horizon. For there is one scope alone proposed to him that would naturally consider after how many Equinoctial times the place of the following body or ray cometh, to the place of that which precedeth in the Geniture, because the Equinoctial times equally pass the Horoscope and Mid-heaven, according to both of which, the likenesses of the local distances are taken, and each time signifies a solar year.

Therefore seeing those things are so, it is fit when the Aphetic and precedent place be in the Oriental Horizon, that the Ascensions even to the meeting of the degrees be taken for the Anareta after so many Equinoctial times cometh to the Aphetic place, that is to the Oriental Horizon: but when the Aphetic place is found in the Mid-heaven, we ought to take all the Ascensions in a right sphere: in which Ascensions each section passeth the Mid-heaven.

But when the Aphetic place is in the Occidental Horizon, we ought to take the Descensions in which each degree of the

distance is carried down, that is, in which the degrees opposite to them are carried upwards.

But when the Aphetic and preceding place is not in these three mentioned limits, but in some space between the times of these Ascensions and Descensions, or Culminations, they do not carry the following places to the precedent, but others: for the places are like the same which have one position, and is in the same degrees in respect to the Horizon and Meridian: but this happens to them which are situate nearest to one of the Semi-circles described by Sections of the Meridian and Horizon; each of which Semi-circles according to the same situation, maketh the temporal hours very equal.

Therefore, as it is carried by the same places, it comes to the same position both of the Horizon and the Meridian; and maketh the times unequal and diverse, by the transit of the Zodiac: and in the same manner according to the positions of the other distances it maketh transits, by times unequal to them; but we have one method, that if the Apheta and precedent places have an Oriental position, or Meridianal, or Occidental, or any other from the analogy of the times, which are brought to the Aphetic places, we take the following place. The way is thus.

Taking the degree of the Zodiac which is on the Mid-heaven, and the precedent, and also the subsequent; first, we consider what position the precedent degree hath, and how many unequal hours it is distant from the Meridian, and numbering the Ascensions of a right sphere, which we find between the considered and the precedent degree, and the Mid-heaven, whether it be above or under the earth, we divide them into the number of horary times of the precedent degree, either diurnal or nocturnal. But if it be above the earth, diurnal; if under the earth, nocturnal; seeing the sections of the Meridian are distant from the Zodiac, the same horary times they are contained under one and the same Semi-circle. Then we inquire after how many Equinoctial times the following sections or place is distant so many equal temporal hours, from the same Meridian as the precedent degree is distant from it. And assuming these, we consider again, by the Ascensions of a right sphere, how many Equinoctial times, according to the position from the beginning, the following degree was distant from the degree of the Mid-heaven, and how many it was distant when it made the equal temporal hours in the precedent; and multiplying these into the number of horary times of the following degree; if they be above the earth, of the diurnal; if under the earth, of the nocturnal; and assuming the times arising from the excess of both distances, we have the number of years sought after.

Note here, that no Converse Direction kills but that of the Hyleg or Prorogator to the Cusp of the 7th.

All the Directions of the Hyleg to Mundane (not to Zodiacal) Rays, which happen between it and the 7th, are to be calculated, and the Arc of Directions to the Benefic's rays are to be added together, and so are the Arc of Directions of the Malefic aspects; and the sum of the Benefic rays are to be added to, but of the Malefic's subtracted from the Arc of Direction of the Prorogator to the Cusp of the 7th, and the result is the true Arc of direction, according to Ptolomy, which most certainly kills, if no Benefic ray assist.

Of Riches.

We will take those things which concern possessive Fortune, from that point called the ⊕ alone, according to which we cast away the distance from the Sun to the Moon from the Horoscope, alike in things that are by day and by night. This being supposed, we will take the Lordship, and consider the strength of them, and their familiarity, and also of those that are configurated with them, or elevated, whether they be of the same or contrary condition.

They therefore which assume the Lordship of the ⊕, being in strength, cause much riches, and chiefly when the Lights give proper testimony to them. But Saturn will increase riches by building, husbandry, or navigation; Jupiter, by protection, or by those things that were committed in trust to him, or by priesthood; Mars, by warfare and generalship: Venus, by friendship and gifts of women: Mercury, by eloquence and business.

Saturn having familiarity with the ⊕, and in configuration with Jupiter, properly causeth hereditaments, and chiefly when this is in superior Angles, Jupiter being Occidental, in a double bodied Sign, or expecting the Moon's application, for then being adopted, they will be the heirs of others: and if they which are of the same condition with the Lords, give testimony of dominion, the possession will remain with them; but if they which are of the contrary condition are elevated above the principal places or succeed, the possession will not endure: but the general times is taken from the inclining of the Stars, which produce the cause to the Angles and Succeedants.

If the Significator of riches be angular, the riches will be acquired in youth; if near the cusp, very early; if in succeedants, in middle age; in cadents, late, and in old age. The same is to be said if they be Oriental or Occidental in respect of the Sun and the World.

Of Honor and Dignity.

We consider those things which concern dignities, and this blessed part, from the disposition of the Lights, and the familiarity of the Stars by which they are guarded. Therefore if both the Lights be found in masculine Signs, and either both or one of them angular, that is, the Sun by day, and the Moon by night chiefly the conditionary; and especially if they have the Satellitium of the five Planets, the Sun being guarded by Oriental Stars, and the Moon by Occidental, they that are born will be kings:* and if the guarding Stars be angular or configurated to the superior Cardinal House of heaven, they will be great and powerful, as Lords of the World, whose happiness and honor will indeed be greater; if the Satellites make configurations Dexter; but if otherwise thus it happens, that the Sun alone is in a masculine Sign, and the Moon in feminine, and of the two one only being in an Angle, they that are born shall only be princes, having power of life and death. If the Luminaries being so in these, and neither of the Satellites be angular, nor give testimony to the Angles, they shall be great, but have particular honors, as guardians, generals, or princely dignity; but not having principality: and if the Lights not being in Angles, it happens that most of the guarding Stars be angular, or configurated to the Angles, they will not give the more illustrious dignities; nevertheless they will moderately excel in civil affairs. If neither of the Satellites are configurated to the Angles, they will be obscure, and not promoted to honor, and if not one of the Lights be found either in a masculine Sign, nor angular, nor guarded by the Benefics, they are born to be extremely abject, and of a very unhappy mind.

Therefore, the general description of highness and lowness of dignities hath such a speculation; but an infinite number of things in a mediocrity are to be considered from the mutation and variety which happens particularly about the Lights themselves, and the Satellitum, and the dominion of the Satellites.† For the Benefics assuming the dominion, or they

* That is to say, such as shall have rule and power extraordinary, or as Kings.

† First, In the proceeding part of this treatise I have told you, that the Satellites of the Sun are Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Venus and Mercury; and those and no other are the Satellites so often mentioned here; and the Satellitum and guards, are the concourse or number of them at any time respecting the Luminaries.

Secondly, That though the Author here is very particular and positive concerning respective dignities, yet we are not to understand that hereby he intends that all that are so born shall arrive to such dignities, nor that every

which are of the same condition, they will possess dignities with greater authority, and will be more firm: but if the Malefics assume the dominion, or they of the contrary condition, they will be of a lower order, and more uncertain.

And we observe the kind of dignities from the properties of the Satellites: for if Saturn hath dominion he will give rich and wealthly government. The rule from Jupiter and Venus will be pleasant, full of gifts and honor. That from Mars will be about expeditions, victories, and terrible to subjects. That from Mercury by understanding, prudence, learning, diligence, and care of affairs.

Of the Quality of the Profession.

Although it would be absurd to expect to predict the exact Trade or Profession of the Native; you may nevertheless by carefully observing the following Rules, be enabled to judge in a general way of the nature of the Trade or Profession the Native will be likely to follow.

The Lord of the Profession is taken two ways, from the Sun, and the Sign which hath dominion of the Mid-heaven. Therefore we ought to observe the Star that maketh Oriental appearance next to the Sun: and that which agrees with the Medium-cœli, either therein, or in familiarity thereto; chiefly when it respects the application of the Moon: and if one and the same Star hath power in both respects, we take that alone, for what is enquired after: and if it is not found in both respects, but only in one of the two, that alone shall be taken: but if one next appear before the Sun, and another be in the Mid-heaven, and hath familiarity with the Moon, both shall be taken; but he shall be prefered who is the most strong unto the dominion.

If none be found making application, nor in the Mid-hea-

one that doth shall be equal therein: for many who have such princely positions, have also others that cut the thread of life before they can arrive thereto, their respective significators are not of equal fortitude to support it; and if they were, the title to such dominion is not the same in all Princes; for the dominions to which some have title, is far short of what others have: and though some by reason of the extraordinary power of their proper significators of honor and dominion, do often invade the rights of others; yet as such more powerful significators are not so common as others; neither are such invasions as general as the particular titles of Princes to respective dominions. The like is to be understood of riches, pleasures, wedlock, children, friends, and enemies, travelling, or the like; for though there may in the nativity be testimonies very large for such matters, yet where there are other testimonies of short life, it follows that where death thereupon accordingly ensues, that all other externals naturally cease and are prevented.

ven, he that hath dominion of the Medium-cœli, we take the proper significator of the office, exercise, or study to which the Native will be agreeable to apply himself; at least when we know the business is commodious to the situation in life; because some are born for idleness from the constitution of their Stars: and the things which concern the Lord of the action is thus investigated.

And the kind of profession will be made known by the properties of the three Stars, that is, when they have dominion of the profession, viz. Mars, Venus, and Mercury, and the Signs in which they are: for Mercury makes scribes, managers of business, calculators, masters, dealers, exchangers, diviners, astrologers, and those who live by learning and interpretation, and the stipends and gifts of others: and if Saturn give testimony to him they will be stewards to others, or interpreters of dreams, or conversant in churches for the sake of divination and enthusiasm; if Jupiter gives testimony, they will be limners, orators, sophisters, conversant with great personages.

If Venus have dominion of the profession, she will make those conversant with the scent of flowers, unguents, and wines, colors, tinctures, spices; as unguent makers, plaiters of garlands, vintners, apothecaries, weavers, sellers of spices, limners, dyers, sellers of garments; and if Saturn gives testimony to her, she will make men dealers in things which relate to pleasure and adorning, sorcerers, poisoners, deceivers, and those that deal in such like: but if Jupiter gives testimony to her, they will be champions, bearers of armory, promoted to honor by favor of the women.

But Mercury ruling the profession, configurated with the Sun, he will make those who work at the fire, as cooks, founders, burners, breakers, workers about metals: but being with the Sun, he makes shipwrights, carpenters, husbandmen, stone cutters, cutters of wood, under workmen. If Saturn gives testimony to him, he makes seamen, emptiers of vaults, feeders of beasts, cooks, butchers. If Jupiter gives testimony, he will make soldiers, servants, tax gatherers, inn keepers, custom gatherers, sacrificers.

Again, two being found rulers of the profession together, if they be Mercury and Venus, they make musicians, causers of melody, and they that are busied about instruments, songs, and poetry, and chiefly when they change places: for then they make stage-players, actors, buyers of men, instrument makers, dancers, players on stringed instruments, caperers, alias tumblers, workers in wax, painters: and if Saturn gives testimony to them, he will make with those mentioned, those that deal in women's ornaments: and if Jupiter gives testi-

mony, they will be lawyers, employed in the commonwealth, teachers of children, rulers of the commons.

If Mars and Mercury together be Lords of the magistry, they will be makers of statues, of armor, engravers of holy things, formers of animals, wrestlers, (Cardan says physicians,) surgeons, accusers, adulterers, evil doers, forgers of writings: and if Saturn gives testimony to them, they will be homicides, stealers of clothes, rapacious, thieves, stealers of cattle, conjurors.

If Mars and Venus together take the Lordship, they will be dyers, ointment makers, workers in tin and lead, gold and silver, dancers in armor, apothecaries, husbandmen, physicians curing by medicines: and if Saturn gives testimony, they will take care of sacred animals, be sextons, lamenters and pipers at funerals, enthusiasts, conversant in mysteries, lamentations, and blood: and if Saturn gives testimony, he will make men sacrificers, augers, bearers of holy things, rulers of women, interpreters, and they who live by such things.

Moreover the quality of the Signs in which the Lords of the profession be, confer the variety of the profession: for they of the human shape conduce to all those sciences and exercises which are for the use of man. But four-footed Signs conduce to metallic arts, negotiations, buildings, smiths and carpenters' art. Tropical and Equinoctial Signs, to interpretations, commutations, measuring, husbandry, and priesthood. Earthy and Watery Signs, to arts conversant about water, and by water, herbs, and ship makers, and also burying, pickling, and salting.

Again, the Moon properly possessing the place of profession, and having a course with Mercury from the conjunction with the Sun, in Taurus, and Capricorn, and Cancer, will make diviners, sacrificers, diviners by basin; in Sagittarius, and Pisces, she makes mourners, and those moved by devils, in Scorpio and Virgo, magicians, astrologers, speakers of oracles, having foreknowledge; in Libra, Aries, and Leo, she makes enthusiasts, interpreters of dreams and conjurors.

Therefore the kinds of profession is distinguished by these, but the greatness thereof is manifested fron the strength of the ruling Stars: for being oriental or angular, they make the profession powerful: but occidental or declining from angles, makes them subordinate.

If the Benefics are superior, they will be great, gainful, firm, glorious, and joyful. If the Malefics be superior to the Lords of the profession, it will be mean, inglorious, unprofitable and uncertain.

Saturn therefore bringeth opposition by cold, and mixture of colors: (slowness and lukewarmness, says Cardan;) but

Mars through boldness and divulgation; and both are opposite to the perfection of the profession: but the general time of increase or diminution of arts, is judged from the disposition of the Stars, which cause the effect, which they have in the respect of the Oriental and Occidental Angles. *

Of Marriage.

To what is said, followeth the discourse about the fit conjunction and living together of man and woman, according to the law, which we ought thus to consider.

In men the disposition of the Moon shall be observed. For when she shall be found in the Oriental Quadrants, she maketh men marry while young; or to marry young women when they are old: † and if she be in these oppressed by the Sun's beams, and configurated with Saturn, she causeth that men do not marry at all. Moreover, if she be in a Sign of one form, and apply to only one of the Stars, she makes men marry but once. If in a Sign Bicorporeal, or of many forms, or apply to many Stars, (in the same Sign, says Cardan,) she causeth many marriages; and if the Stars which receive the application, either by propinquity of place, or by testimony, ‡ are Benefics, they will get good wives; but if the Malefics, evil; therefore Saturn receiving the application, he promiseth laborious and austere wives; but if Jupiter possesseth the application, grave and taking care of the house; if Mars, bold and refractory; if Venus, cheerful and merry; if Mercury, wise and brisk; if Venus be with Saturn, Jupiter, or Mercury, she promiseth those that are advantageous; lovers of their husband and children; but if with Mars, passionate, unstable, and inconsiderate; in men thus.

In women, let the Sun be observed instead of the Moon, for he being situate in the Oriental Quarters, they will marry young, or (Cardan adds, when in age) be married to young men: but being Occidental, they will marry late, or to men aged or stricken in years; and if he be in a Sign of one form

* The east Angle signifies the beginning of life, the west Angle the end, the Mid-heaven the middle part, that is, from 30 to 40, or thereabout; and significators accordingly disposed in the radical figure, will produce their effects in time conformable.

Cardan in his comment on this part says, the Planet making Oriental appearance, must not in this case be above 30 degrees from the Sun, and that if 2 or 3 Planets be so taken, that which is nearest the Sun must be elected before others, provided he can be well seen.

† Cardan addeth, if she be in Occidental, he will marry late, or when young to an old woman.

‡ That is, have dominion in the place.

or configurated to one Oriental Star, he will cause that they will marry but once. If in a double bodied or of many forms, or configurated to many Oriental Stars, he will give many husbands.

Saturn configurated to the Sun, will promise husbands modest, rich, and laborious: Jupiter, grave and magnanimous; Mars, violent, without natural affection, and unruly; Venus, neat and handsome; Mercury, one who procures what is necessary for life, employed in business. If Venus be found with Saturn, dull and timorous: with Mars, quick, amorous and adulterous; with Mercury, she will give those desirous of boys.

They are called Oriental Quarters in respect of the Sun, which precede the Oriental and Occidental Sign of the Zodiac: in respect of the Moon, they form the New and Full, to the Quarters: the Occidental are opposite to these Quarters.

When therefore both the Genitures of the Man and Wife, have the Lights so configurate with agreement, that is, being sextile or trine to each other, their living together for the most part continues, and chiefly when the agreement is with change, (that is, with mutual reception,) and the duration will be more firm, when the husband's Moon agrees with the Sun of his wife: but if the position of the Lights be in Signs inconjunct or opposite, or in a square, the living together will be dissolved on light occasions, and they will be finally estranged from each other.

If the Benefics behold the configuration of the Lights which they make with agreement, the duration of their marriage shall be honest, pleasant, and profitable: but if the Malefics behold the configuration, it will be quarrelsome, contentious, and hurtful.

So likewise when the Lights are not well configurated with agreement: if the Benefics give testimony to these, the marriage shall never be cut off, but receive conciliation and restitution: but if the Malefics give testimony to the disagreeing position, the marriage will be dissolved with scandal and disgrace. Mercury alone being with the Malefics, the dissolution shall be for public disgrace, and if Venus be found with them, the divorce shall be for adultery, sorcery and such like.

But they who in the other manner contract together, are considered in both genders from the Star of Venus, agreeing with Saturn, or Mars, because these meeting the Luminaries, they will be discerned living together with familiars, and with near relations or kindred; and it will be according as Venus shall be affected towards the others; for if she be affected

towards Mars, it will be with those of a younger age; seeing they each one have exaltation in mutual Trigonal Signs. But if she be affected to Saturn, it will be with those of older age, seeing they have House Trigonal to each other: whence Venus with Mars manifestly produces amorous affection; and if the Star of Mercury be with them, it will not be without divulgation. *

If she be found in familiar and promiscuous Signs, as Capricorn and Pisces, she causeth contracts with brothers and relations: and in men if Venus be with the Moon, she causeth them to join to two sisters, or relations; and in women if she be with Jupiter, (Cardan says the Sun) she causeth them to join to two brothers or kinsmen.

Again, Venus being with Saturn, causeth that the living together be pleasant and constant; and if Mercury be with them, they will be profitable; but if Mars be there, unstable, hurtful, and jealous. After the same manner, if Venus shall be configurated with them, agreeably the contracts of matrimony will be with those that are of equal age. If she be more Oriental, that is easterly, with young men or women; if more Occidental, with older men or women. If Venus and Saturn be found in promiscuous Signs, that is, in Capricorn, and Libra, the intercourse will be with kindred: but this configuration of the Stars on the Horoscope, or Mid-heaven, if the Moon concur, the men with their mothers, or aunts, or mothers-in-law; but the women with their sons, or their brothers son's, or their daughters husbands. If instead of the Moon, the Sun concur in the said configuration, and chiefly if the Stars are Occidental, the men will associate with their daughters, or their sons wives; but the women with their fathers or their uncles, or their daughters husbands.

If the mentioned configurations, not being in Signs of one kind, † are found in feminine places, they wholly affect to lust and immodesty; as if they be found in the fore parts and latter parts of Aries, and the Hyades, the Pitchers, the last part of Leo, and the face of Capricorn: and if the mentioned Stars, that is Saturn and Venus, be in the two chief Angles

* As Mars in Capricorn the triplicity of Venus, and Venus in Pisces the triplicity of Mars. Or Mars in Pisces the exaltation of Venus, and Venus in Capricorn, the exaltation of Mars. So Capricorn and Libra are common to Saturn and Venus, for Venus in Libra hath House, and Saturn triplicity; and in Capricorn, Saturn hath House, and Venus triplicity; and so are said to be in promiscuous Signs.

† That is, not in Masculine or Feminine Signs, but opposite, which are alike in the Sex, but contrary in Nature, and those that are ruled by places of a contrary nature, as Capricorn, ruled by Saturn and Mars; Pisces by Jupiter and Venus.

of the east and Mid-heaven, they will make the affections altogether open and public: but being in two last Angles, the west and the north, they will make eunuchs and barren, and without passage.

The things which concern men in marriage, we consider from Mars, for if he be separate from Saturn and Venus, aided by the testimony of Jupiter, he maketh men pure and modest in their conduct, and disposed only to what is natural; when found with Saturn alone, and he in strength, they will be dull and cold. If Jupiter and Venus be configurated to both these being together, they will be easily moved on to amorous actions, but continent, and refrain themselves, and avoid the shame. If Saturn (and Cardan says Jupiter) being away, Mars be with Venus alone, or if Jupiter be with her, they will be lascivious, taking all manner of pleasure: and if one of the Stars be Occidental, and the other Oriental, they will be disposed to both what is natural and what is not so, but not above measure. If both the Stars be found Occidental, they will be unnatural in their desires. If the Sign be masculine, to men of all ages.

Further, if Venus be found more Occidental, he will associate with mean women servants and externals; if Mars be found Occidental, with more eminent gentlewomen, and married folks. So it is concerning Men.

In women, let Venus be observed, for she being configurated with Jupiter or Mercury, makes them sober and pure in their conduct: but having familiarity with Mercury, Jupiter not being with them, she will make them prone to lust, but contain themselves, and avoid the shame. Venus being configurated to Mars alone, will make them lascivious, and very amorous: if to both of them together or configurated, if the Star of Jupiter shall be with them, they will be more dull: Mars being under the Sun's beams, they will associate with servants, mean persons, or externals: but if Venus be under the Sun's beams, they will associate with more eminent and genteel persons, and the Stars be in Feminine places, or configured after a feminine manner, they will be only prone to be passive: if they be disposed after a masculine manner, to be active also. Saturn having familiarity to these configurations, (and he in feminine Signs, adds Cardan) contributeth to the greater filthiness: if Oriental and Masculine, obnoxious to infamy and reprehension by reason of detestable lust: if helped by the Star of Jupiter, to the greater modesty; Mercury, to the actions being more notorious, dangerous and open.

Cardan here adds, and so if the Signs be feminine, to women. If both be matutine, they will desire boys.

Of Children.

It follows after these that we pass to the treatise concerning Children. Therefore this observation is to be taken from the Stars that are in or configurated to the Mid-heaven, or the succeedant, which they call the Good Demon. If there be not any Stars in that place, or configurated, you ought to observe the opposites.

The Moon, and Jupiter, and Venus, are assumed for givers of Children; the Sun, Mars, and Saturn, are assumed for sterility or paucity of Children: but Mercury being common to both, contributes according to that to which he is configurated; giving when he is Oriental in the east, but taking away when he is Occidental in the west.

Therefore the Stars that are givers of Children, being so disposed, and by themselves, give one child; but in double-bodied Signs, or in feminine, they cause the generating of twins.

So also being in fruitful Signs, as ♋; ♍, ♐, they give two or more. If they be of a masculine nature, because of the configuration to the ☉, and because of being in masculine Signs, they will give males; but if of a feminine nature, females. If they be overcome by the Malefics, or be found in barren places or Signs, such as ♌ and ♏, they will give children, but not for good or vital. If the ☉ and the Malefics possess the said places, that is the Mid-heaven and the succedant of the Good Demon, if they be in masculine or steril Signs, and have not the Benefics superior, they shew utter want of children: but if they be in feminine or fruitful Signs, or aided by testimony of the Benefics, they give children indeed, but such as are hurt and short-lived.

Both conditions † being configurated and having respect to prolific Signs, there will happen a rejection of children according to the excess which the Stars giving testimony have in each condition, either of all the children, or of a few at most, as they are found more powerful by being more Oriental, or more angular, or more elevated, or more succedant.

Therefore, if the Lords of the mentioned Signs being givers of children, be Oriental, or in proper places, the given childred will be famous and glorious. If Occidental, or not in proper places, they will be obscure and mean.

† That is, if the Malefics have Dominion, and the Benefics give Testimony.

By the Good Demon here mentioned, the Author intends the eleventh House,; and by assuming the Horoscope of each Star of those that give childreu, we are advised to make the degree in which such Star is, the degree ascending; and having made the figure of Heaven conformable to the Ascendant, to judge it as though a nativity to the respective children.

Moreover, if they agree with the ⊕ and Horoscope, they will make them beloved by their parents, pleasant, and heirs of their goods. But if they be found unconjoined, and disagreeing, they will be rebellious, odious and hurtful to their parents, and will miss the inheritance of their subtance.

Moreover, if the Stars which give children are agreeably configurated among themselves, they will make them lovers of their brethren, and respectful to each other.

And such is the general consideration of children, but in those particulars which follow, we ought to assume the Horoscope at each Star of those which give the children, and observe and judge the other dispositions as in a nativity.

Of Travelling.

Things which concern travelling we consider from the position of the Luminaries to the Angles of both, but chiefly of the ☽ : for she being Occidental * and declining from Angles, causes Travelling, and change of places. And sometimes ♂ himself Occidental or declining from the place of the Midheaven causes the same, when he hath an opposite or quartile aspect to the Luminaries. If the ⊕ also falleth in Signs which cause travelling, the whole life, conversation, and actions will be spent in a foreign country.

Moreover, when the Benefics beholds the mentioned places, † or succeed, the travelling life will be famous and profitable, and the returns will be quick, and without hindrance. But if the Malefics behold or succeed, the travelling will be hurtful and dangerous, and the return difficult; but we ought every where to assume the temperatement, and observe the stronger of the made configurations.

For the most part if the Lights fall to the inclining of the Oriental Quadrants, the travelling will happen to be towards the east and south parts, but if in the Occidental Quadrants, the peregrination will be towards the north or west.

Moreover, if the Signs which cause travelling be of one form, either in respect to themselves, or the Stars which have the Lordship over them, travelling will be rare, and not without some leisure; but if they be doubled bodied, or of two forms, they will be continual, and in many times.

Jupiter and Venus being rulers of the Lights, and the places which cause travelling, the travelling will not only be without danger, but also pleasant; for by the Governors of those countries and concourse of friends, he is sent away with pleasure, the constitution of the air, and the plenty of necessaries favoring.

* In the seventh House.

† That is, place of the Sun, Moon, and Part of Fortune.

If Mercury be joined to them, there will be an addition of gain, gifts, and honors.

But Saturn and Mars possessing the Lights, especially if they are opposed mutually to them, they will cause great dangers and unprofitable travelling. But being in moist Signs, they will produce dangers by ship-wrecks, or by desert and unaccessible places. In fixed Signs, by precipices and contrary winds. In tropical and equinoctial Signs, by want of necessaries, and a sickly constitution of the air. In human shaped Signs, by robbers, ambushes, and thefts. In earthly Signs, by the increase of wild beasts, or earthquakes. But if Mercury concur, the danger will occur through accusations, and creeping things and casters of venom.

The reason of these peculiar judgments, whether they will be gainful or hurtful, is taken from the difference of that Planet which gives the cause; and the cause of the comprehended places, works and possessions, power, and dignities is to be considered according to the first and principal constitution; but the signification of the times appear from the configuration meeting in succeeding times, that is to say, from directions.

Some are of opinion, that what is said of the Lights is also to be understood of ♃ and the ⊕. But though they are allowed to cause travelling, and shew the success of such travelling; yet the Luminaries alone and only do point out the quarter towards which the peregrination shall be.

The Signs said to cause travelling, are the Signs in which the aforesaid Significators of travelling are found.

Of the Quality of Death.

It remains that we speak of the quality of death. And we know this from what has been said in the discourse about the space of life, how death will happen, the ruling place being Oriental or Occidental.

For if death happens by the Orientality, or occurse of the beams, the place of the occurse ought to be observed, and according to that judge of the quality of death. If it be Occidental, consider the Occidental place, for such as they are which rule the mentioned places; or if none rule then such as before others are carried to these places, such ought we to esteem the deaths, the configurating Stars concurring, and also the quality of the mentioned killing places, and the nature of the Signs and the Terms.

Therefore Saturn possessing the dominion of death, * causeth death by chronic distempers, phthisics, fluxions, colliqua-

* That is, the causer of the Quality of death.

tions, agues, spleen diseases, dropsies, chyliac and hysteric distempers: and in a word those arising from abundance of cold.

Jupiter, by quinsey, inflamation of the lungs, apoplexy, cramp, and cardiac affections, and in some, they which happen with vehement breathing, its disorder and stink. Mars causeth death by continual fevers, semitertians, sudden strokes and nephretic affections, spitting of blood, and hemorrhage; by abortion, birth, and St. Anthony's fire; and in a word, they which arise from abundance and ametry of heat. Venus by affections of the stomach and liver, ring worms, bloody-flux, putrefactions, fistulas, and giving of poison; and in a word, those which proceed from abundance of moisture, or through want or wasting thereof; but Mercury, by madness, extacy, melancholy, falling sickness, falls, coughs, spitting affections, or those which happen simply through much dryness or want thereof: but thus they die naturally, when the rulers of death are in their proper and natural quality, and none of the Malefics concur.

But violent and remarkable deaths happen when both the Malefics are Lords of the Anaretic places, or, are joined, square, oppose, or otherwise evilly affect both the Lights, or the Sun alone, or the Moon, or both; for then the mischievousness of death proceeds from the congress of the Malefics; but the greatness of the death, from the testimony of the Lights.

Its Quality is known from the rest of the aspecting Stars, and the Signs containing the Malefics.

Saturn therefore squaring or opposing the Sun, contrary to condition, in fixed Signs, causeth death by suffocation, by tumults of the people, by hanging, or strangling. In like manner he doth the same if he be Occidental, and the Moon follow. If he be in beast-like formed, either Signs or places, he causeth to perish by wild beasts. And if Jupiter favours, and is infected by the Malefics, it will be in public and celebrated places, sometimes by condemnation to die; if he be in the west opposing either of the Luminaries, the Native will end his life in prison; being configurated to Mercury, especially about the serpents which are in his sphere, or if found in earthy Signs, they will die by poison.

And Venus being joined to them, death will occur by poison, and the treachery of women; in ♏ or ♓,* or in moist Signs configurated to the Moon, he will cause death by water, being suffocated and drowned. If he be found about Argo, by shipwreck. If he be in tropical or equinoctial Signs, and instead of the Sun, Mars be there, he will cause death from *falling*. If they culminate, death will happen by precipita-

* Some say Virgo or Pisces.

tion from on high; Saturn therefore will cause such things being configurated with the Luminaries.

Mars squaring or opposing the Sun or Moon contrary to condition, in Signs of human form, he will cause death by slaughter, either civil, hostile, or by himself.

If Venus give testimony to them, death will ensue by women.

If Mercury be configurated to them, death will happen by robbers, evil doers, and pirates. If he be in mutilate or imperfect Signs, or with the Gorgon or Perseus, or Caput Medusæ, he will induce death by beheading, or cutting off of members; being found in ♏ or ♐, he will cause death by medical cutting, burning, or contractions; if he be found in the Mid-heaven, or opposite to the Mid-heaven, he will cause death by crucifixion; and chiefly if found about Cepheus and Andromeda. If he be found in the west, or opposite to the Horoscope, he will cause death by burning of fire; in four-footed Signs, by falling and the breaking of limbs.

If Jupiter be evilly affected, or deprived of all his dignities, give testimony to Mars, death will happen through the anger of Princes and Kings, and condemnation. If the Malefics especially agree together, and so oppose any of the said places, they make the cruelty of the death the more; but the quality of death and the dominion, will offer near that which is in the Anaretic.

Death happens in strange places when the Stars which possess the Anaretic places fall from Angles, and especially when the Moon either is found with, or in square, or oppose, the said places.

It is here evident, first, that Ptolemy, whom the generality of Astrologers by one consent, have acknowledged to be the Prince and principal of their profession, had not the least regard to the 8th House, or its Lord, for the cause and quality of death; as taught in vulgar astrology; but, in all vital nativities to directions, either direct by which the Anaretic point is carried to the place of the Givers of life, or converse by the Hyleg's being carried to the west Angle, which alone of all converse directions hath power to cut off life.

Secondly, in such nativities as are vital, one direction, how malevolent soever, rarely kills; but in all or most nativities whatsoever, there is required a train of malevolent directions to concur to death; for it hath been most admirably proved by the laborious Partridge, in his Opus Reformatum et Defectio Geniturarum, even but one single direction, though it be a □ or ☌ of the Benevolents, intervening among such trains of malevolent directions, at the Anaretic point, generally preserves life, (that is directions of the malevolents) concur so together without the aid or intervenings of the Benevolents, they fail not to destroy life.

Thirdly, in such trains of directions, the author here distinguisheth between the killing Planet and the causer of the Quality of death; for one Planet doth not give both. The foremost of the malevolent train is the killing place, and shews the time of death; but the following directions, though Benevolent, shew the quality. If the train fall all together and none follow, for the quality observe those which precede, though at a distance and Benevolent also; for though the Benevolent contribute to the preservation of life as aforsaid, yet they frequently specify the disease which is the cause of death. And with these our author tells us concur the configurating Stars, the quality of the Stars and Signs, and the terms in which their Lords happen.

Fourthly, in violent deaths the Genethliacal positions of the Lights are to be observed, and how the Malefics affect them, and are also concerned by directions in the quality of death.

Secondary Directions.

By Secondary Directions, we are to understand those configurations and familiarities of the Planets which arise daily from the time of birth, and are applied to the prediction of events that are come to pass in the same succession of years from the birth, as correspond with those days. For example, all aspects of the Stars, both to the Luminaries and cardinal Houses, that happen on the first day after birth, are applied to the first year: those of the second day after birth, to the second year: those of the third day, to the third year; and so on in progressive rotation, as far as this speculation can extend.

In the management of these directions we are principally to observe what configurations the Moon has to the other Planets: for if she be joined with Benefic Stars, or irradiated by their good aspects, or even by the good aspects of the Infortunes, it denotes a happy, healthful, and prosperous year to the Native, in nature and quality peculiar to the principal significator in each configuration, and to the Houses and Signs in which they fall in the radical figure. But on the contrary, if the Moon be joined to malevolent Stars, or irradiated by them, or in parallel declination of the Infortunes, it forbodes to those years pointed out by the days, in which these evil configurations happen, great afflictions either in mind, body, or estate: and if a primary direction should correspond with them, of the same malignant nature, a complication of temporal misfortunes will most probably ensue.

In the consideration of these directions, we are particularly to attend to the critical days and climacterial years, for at those times the good or evil configurations of the Planets are most powerful in their operation. If upon either of those occasions the Moon be found in □ or ☍ to the place in which

she was posited at the time of birth, and an evil primary direction of the significator of life correspond therewith, Death is then at the door, or at that time very much to be feared, even in the strongest constitutions, or however healthy they may appear to be when they begin to take effect.

And so likewise if the Sun or Moon in the secondary directions, are afflicted by the malignant rays of inauspicious configurations, with an evil primary direction, with which both the Revolution and Transit agree, it is considered an irrevocable indication of death to the Native.

A Table of the Essential and Accidental Fortitudes and Debilities of the Planets.

Essential Dignities.		*Essential Debilities. or Fall.*	
In house, or reception by house	5	In Detriment	5
In exaltation, or reception thereby	4	In Fall	4
In Triplicity	3	Peregrine	5
In Term	2		
In Decanate or Face	1		

Accidental Fortitude.		*Accidental Debilities.*	
In the Ascen. or 10 house	5	In the 12th house	5
In the 7, 4, and 11 houses	4	In the 8th or 6th house	4
In the 2nd or 5th houses	3	Retrograde	5
In the 9th house	2	Slow in motion	2
In the 3rd house	1	Sat. Jupt. Mars, Occident.	2
Direct	4	Venus & Mercury Oriental	2
Swift in motion	2	Moon decreasing	2
Saturn, ♄, Mars, Oriental	2	Combust of Sun	5
Venus, ♀, or ☽ Occident.	2	Under Sol's beams	4
Free from combustion	5	Besieged of Sat. & Mars	5
Moon increasing	2	In partile ☌ of Sat. or Mars	4
In partile ☌ with ♄ & ♀	5	In partile ☍ of Sat. or Mars	5
In partile △ to ♄ & ♀	4	In partile ☌ with ☊	4
In partile ☌ with ☊	5	In □ of Saturn or Mars	4
In the terms of ♄ or ♀	1	In terms of Saturn or Mars	1
Conjunction Spica Virgin	5	Con. with *Caput Algol*	5
In Hayz	1	In Cazimi *	5
Conjunction Cor. Leonis	6		
Moon increasing	6		
Besieged by ♄ and Venus	5		

* See observations on Cazimi in the Terms of Art.

A TABLE

Of the Essential Dignities of the Planets, according to the Great Ptolemy.

Signs.	Houses of the Planets or Lords of Signs	Exaltation.	Triplici ties. D N	Terms of the Planets.							The Phases of the Planets.				Detrimt.	Fall.
♈	♂ ☽	☉ 19	☉ ♃	♃ 6	♀ 14	☿ 21	♂ 26	☉ 30	☿ 10	☉ 20	♀ 30	♀	♄
♉	♀ ☿	☽ 3	♀ ☽	♀ 8	☿ 15	♃ 22	☉ 26	☿ 30	☽ 20	♄ 30	♂		
♊	☿ ☽	♄ 3	☉ ☿	☿ 7	♃ 14	♀ 21	☉ 25	☽ 30	♃ 10	☽ 20	☉ 30	♃	☿	♃	♂
♋	☽ ☉	♂ 15	☽ ♃	☿ 6	♃ 13	☿ 20	♀ 27	♄ 30	♀ 10	☿ 20	☽ 30	♄	♂	♄	
♌	☉ ☿		☉ ♃	♃ 6	☿ 13	♀ 19	♃ 25	☽ 30	♄ 10	♃ 20	☿ 30	♂	☉	♂	♃
♍	☿ ☽	☿ 15	♀ ☽	♀ 7	♃ 13	♀ 18	♄ 24	☿ 30	☉ 10	♀ 20	☽ 30	♃	☿	♃	♄	♀
♎	♀ ☿	♄ 21	♂ ☽	♄ 6	♀ 11	♃ 19	☿ 24	☽ 30	♂ 10	♄ 20	♃ 30	♂	☉	♀	☽
♏	♂ ♀		☿ ☽	♂ 6	♃ 14	♀ 21	☿ 27	♄ 30	♂ 10	☉ 20	♀ 30	☽	♀	☿	♃
♐	♃ ☉	☉ 3	♄ ♃	♄ 8	♀ 14	☿ 19	♃ 25	♂ 30	♀ 10	♂ 20	☿ 30	♃	☿	♃	♂
♑	♄ ☽	♂ 28	♀ ☿	♀ 6	☿ 12	♃ 19	♂ 25	♄ 30	♃ 10	♂ 20	☉ 30	♂	♀	♄	☿
♒	♄ ♃		♄ ♂	♄ 8	♃ 12	♀ 20	♃ 25	♂ 30	♀ 10	☿ 20	☽ 30	♄	♂		
♓	♃ ♀	♀ 27	♃ ♀	♃ 8	♃ 14	☿ 20	♂ 26	♄ 30	♄ 10	♃ 20	♂ 30	♂	☿	♂	☿

N. B. In the above Table, M stands for Mars, Mer for Mercury, S for Sun, Sat for Saturn, J for Jupiter, V for Venus, *m* for Moon.

Astronomical Characters, etc. Explained, as used in this Work, and Engraved on the Copper Plates.

—o—

♈ Aries,	♋ Cancer,	♎ Libra,	♑ Capricorn,
♉ Taurus,	♌ Leo,	♏ Scorpio,	♒ Aquarius,
♊ Gemini,	♍ Virgo,	♐ Sagittarius,	♓ Pisces.

♄ Saturn,	☿ Mercury,
♃ Jupiter,	⊖ Tellus, (the Earth)
♂ Mars,	☽ Luna, (the Moon)
☉ Sol, (the Sun)	☊ North Node of ☽ or Dragon's Head,
♀ Venus,	☋ South Node of ☽ or Dragon's Tail.

☌ Conjunction,	△ Trine,
S□ Semi-quartile,	SS□ or SSq□ Sesquiquadrate,
✱ Sextile,	Bq. Biquintile,
Q. or Quint. Quintile,	☍ Opposition.
□ Quartile,	

P. or Par. signifies Parallel. P. Dec. Parallel of Declination. R. P. or R. Par. Rapt Parallel. Observe, that the Astronomical mark for each Planet engraved in a small character near the line of the 4th House, upon the Planispheres indicates the said Planets Parallel of Declination, the letter C, being joined to the Planetary mark, shews the Contra Parallel of Declination of the said Planet, or Planets. M. d. d. for Mundane Direct Direction, and M. d. c. for Mundane Converse Direction. A mark or character for the Semi-quartile, may be easily substituted, by making the mark for the quartile with a straight line or dash of the pen drawn right through it, and the Sesquiquadrate, by making the □, and drawing two of the horizontal lines a little longer than the perpendiculars, so that it will look like □ and half a □ added to it And the Quintile, by O with a 5 in the middle. And the Biquintile, by making a dash of the pen on one side of the △.

Note. The Astrologers account the Semi-quartile, the Quartile, the Sesquiquadrate, Contra-anticision, and Opposition of any, and of all Planets to be bad, or unfortunate. The Sextile, Quintile, Trine, and Biquintile, good and fortunate. The Conjunction, and also the Parallels both Zodiacal and Mundane, are accounted good, with good Planets, but unfortunate with evil Planets.

ASPECT,

An Aspect of a Planet is either Platick or Partile. A Partile Aspect is, when two Planets behold each other in the same degree and minute; but a Platick Aspect is, when two Planets behold each other within the half of their Orbs.

For instance, if the ☉ be in 2° 10' of ♈, and ♀ in 10° 20' of ♊, they are said to be in Platick ✱, and if they are within 12° 30' distance from a Partile Aspect, they are still within half of their Orbs, for half the Orb of the ☉ is 8° 30'; and half the Orb of ♀ is 4°, their sum being 12° 30.

A Table of the Planets Orbs.

	D.	M.	
♄	10	0	Orbs before and after any Aspect.
♃	12	0	
♂	7	30	
☉	17	0	
♀	8	0	
☿	7	30	
☽	12	30	

Planets Mean Motions.

	D.	M.	S.
♄	0	2	0
♃	0	4	59
♂	0	31	27
☉	0	59	8
♀	1	36	8
☿	4	5	33
☽	13	10	35

This Table of Mean Motions is agreeable to Le Lande's Astronomy. But Dr. Sibly erroneously states the Mean Motions of Mercury and Venus at 59' 8" each. I have given both, and the Artist can use that which pleases him best.

TERMS OF ART.

Which ought to be well understood by every Person who Studies the Celestial Sciences.

Accidents. Signify the remarkable chances, or events that take place during our lives. *Alcochoden.* The giver of life. *Almuten.* Lord of the Figure. *Apheta.* Giver of life. *Anareta.* A cutter off, a destroyer. *Aphorism.* A general Rule. *Application.* Of Planets three, namely. *First*, when a Planet swift in motion applies to one that is more slow, they being both direct; this is called direct application. *Secondly*, when they are both retrograde; this is deemed an ill application *Thirdly*, when one is direct in motion, and the other retrograde; this is no good application, but not so bad as the last; this is called a retrograde application. *Aspect.* To behold. *Azimene.* Lame or weak. *Besieged.* Is when a Planet is between the bodies of Saturn and Mars. *Cadent. Falling* or weak. *Cadent Houses.* Are the 3rd, 6th, 9th,

and 12th. *Cardinal Points.* The Cusps of the 1st, 4th, 7th, and 10th Houses. *Circles of Position.* See pages 56 and 173. *Cardinal Signs.* Are ♈, ♋, ♎, ♑. *Cazimi.* Is when a Planet is within sixteen minutes of the Sun's centre, in longitude and latitude, this was formerly considered a fortitude, but the most rational and philosophical among modern Astrologers account Cazimi to be a debility the same as combustion, for indeed it would be absurd to imagine that a Planet would be weakened by being 8° 30' from the Sun, and that he should be strengthened by being within 16' distance. *Combustion.* A Planet is said to be Combust or Scorched, when he is not more than 8° 30' either before or after the Sun. *Commanding Signs.* Are the first six. *Common Signs.* Are ♊, ♍, ♐, ♓. *Cosmical.* Stars that rise with the Sun. *Cusp.* The beginning or first point of a house. *Daily, or Diurnal Motion.* The progress a Planet makes in 24 hours. *Debilities.* Certain affections of the Planets, whereby they are weakened. *Decanate.* Is one third of a Sign, or 10°. *Declination of a Planet.* Is its distance north or south from the line of the equator. *Decumbiture.* The time a person falls sick *Detriment.* Loss or damage. *Dexter Aspect.* Towards the right hand. *Digit.* The twelfth part of the diameter of the Sun or Moon. *Dignities.* Advantages whereby a Planet's virtue or power, is increased. *Dragon's Head.* The Moon's north Node. *Dragon's Tail.* The Moon's south Node, being the two points where the Moon's orbit intersects the ecliptic. *Dispositor.* Is the Planet that disposes of another Planet, thus, if Mars be found in Taurus, which is the House of Venus, Venus is in this case the Dispositor of Mars, the same must be understood of all other Planets. *Dysis.* The 7th House. *Elongation.* A Planet's greatest distance from the Sun. *Emersion.* The coming forth out of shadow or darkness. *Epact.* The Moon's age at the beginning of the year. *Ephemeris.* A diary or day book of the Planet's motions. *Epicyle.* A little circle whose centre is in the circumference of a greater circle. *Epocha.* A root or beginning. *Erect a Figure.* Is to calculate or delineate the 12 Houses aright for any given time. *Face.* The third part of a Sign, or 10°. *Fiery Triplicity.* See page 203. *Fixed Signs.* See page 203. *Fortitudes.* Power or influences of the Planets made stronger, by being well posited. *Fortunes.* The two benevolent Planets, Jupiter and Venus. *Frustration.* Is to be understood, when a light Planet applies to the aspect of another more ponderous, and before that aspect is accomplished, the ponderous one meets with the aspect of some other Planet. *Fruitful Signs.* Are Cancer, Scorpio, and Pisces. *Geniture.* The moment of time an infant is

brought into the world. *Mundane Parallels.* Are equal proportional distances of the Planets (according to their Semiarcs) from the cusp of any of the angles of the figure; one Planet remaining before the cusp of any angle, (or of its opposite angle,) and the other Planet being placed after it, when the direction is finished. But in Mundane Oppositions when the aspect is finished, both Planets will remain before, or both will be placed after the respective angles of the figure from which their distance was taken.

Horary Question. A question asked at a certain hour, and for which time a figure of the heavens is erected. *Haiz.* When a masculine and diurnal Planet in the day is above the earth, or a feminine nocturnal Planet in the night time is under the earth. *Imun Celi.* The bottom of Heaven, or the 4th House. *Increasing in Light.* Is when a Planet is departing from the Sun. *Infortunes, or unfortunate Planets.* Are Saturn and Mars. *Ingress.* An entrance upon or going into. *Joys of the Planets.* Certain dignities happening to them. *Latitude.* A Planet's distance either north or south from the ecliptic: in geography it is the distance of the equator, from the point right over head, also, the elevation of the pole above the horizon. *Light of the Time.* Is the Sun by day, and the Moon by night. *The Lights.* Are the Sun, and Moon. *Light.* A Planet is said to be light, when his motion is quicker than that he is compared with. *Longitude of a Planet or Star.* Is its distance from Aries; but in geography, the distance from the first meridian. *Lord of the Year.* Is that Planet which has most fortitudes in a revolutional figure. *Lord of the Geniture.* Is that Planet which has the greatest strength in a person's nativity. *Lord of the Hour.* The Planet which governs the twelfth part of the day or night. *Masculine and Feminine Planets.* Masculine are ☉, ♄, ♃, and ♂; the feminine are ☽ and ♀; but ☿ is sometimes of a masculine, and sometimes of a feminine nature, according to the Planet he is joined with. *Matutine.* Belonging to the morning. *Medium Celi* Mid-heaven, 10th House, or angle of the south. *Mutual Reception.* When two Planets are each in the House of the other. *Moveable Signs.* Are ♈, ♋, ♎, ♑. *Mute Signs.* Are ♋, ♏ ♓. *Natural Day.* The space of 24 hours. *Nativity.* The true time of any person's birth, also, the figure of heaven erected to that moment of time. *Nodes.* Signify the Dragon's head ☊, and tail ☋. *Northren Signs, or Commanding Signs.* The first six are called so. *Obeying Signs.* Are the six last Signs. *Oblique Ascension.* Is that degree and minute of the equinoctial which rises with any given point of the zodiac, or that rises with the centre of the Sun, Moon, Star, or Planet. *Ob-*

lique Descension. Is that part of the equinoctial which sets with a given point of the zodiac, or that sets with the centre of the Sun, Moon, etc, *Occidental.* Belonging to the west, the 7th House is called the west angle, in astrology; also, a Planet that rises, and sets after the Sun is said to be Occidental. *Oriental.* Belonging to the east; the 1st House is called the east angle, in astrology; a Planet rising and setting befere the Sun, is Oriental. *Opposition.* Is when two Planets are 180 degres distant. *Peregrination.* Is when a Planet is posited in a Sign wherein he hath no essential dignities, neither by house, exaltation, triplicity, term or face; as a stranger or one out of authority. *Pole, or Pole of Elevation of a Planet.* Is answerable to the latitude under which it must be directed by Oblique Ascensions, or Descensions, when you direct it to the aspects of other Planets, see the II. and III. parts of this treatise, particularly pages 55, and 56. *Primary Planets.* Are Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Venus, Mercury, and Herschel. *Primum Mobile.* The first mover, or tenth sphere in the old astronomy. *Prohibition.* Is when one Planet is applying to the conjunction of another, and before this is accomplished, another Planet conjoins the former, and in this manner forms a Prohibition. *Promittors.* Planets that promise to bring something to pass. *Prorogator of Life.* The same as Hyleg. *Querent.* An enquirer, or one that asks a question. *Quesited.* The person, or thing enquired after. *Reception.* Is when Planets are in each others dignities, whether in house, exaltation, triplicity, term, or face. *Refranation.* Is when one Planet applies to the aspect, or body of some other, and before he can complete that aspect, he becomes retrograde. *Rectify a Nativity.* Is to bring the estimate time to the true. *Retrograde.* Is when a Planet apparently moves backward in the zodiac, as when a Planet appears to move from ♉ into ♈, and from ♈ into ♓, etc. *Right Ascension.* Is the degree and minute, etc., of the equinoctial reckoned from the beginning of ♈. *Revolution.* In astrology, signifies the return of the Sun to the same degree and minute he was in, at the moment of birth. It also signifies a figure of the Heavens, calculated or set for the very moment the Sun returns to the same point of the zodiac he was in, at the time of birth. Astrologers form a general idea or judgment of the events of any particular year, by the revolutional figure for that year. *Separation.* Is when two Planets have lately been in aspect or conjunction together, and have now separated or gone from it. *Sinister Aspect.* Towards the left, or according to the succession of the Signs of the zodiac. *Slow in Motion.* Is when a Planet's diurnal motion is less than the mean motion. *Succeed-*

ant Houses. Are the 2nd, 5th, 8th, and 11th. *Sun Beams.* A Planet is accounted under the Sun Beams, till he be 17° distant from him. *Swift in Course.* Is when a Planet moves more than his mean motion in 24 hours. *Translation.* Is when a light Planet separates from a ponderous one, and immediately applies to another, superior; and so translates the nature of the former to the latter. *Vespertine.* When a Planet sets after the Sun *Violent Signs.* Are Aries, Libra, Scorpio, Capricorn, Aquarius. *Void of Course.* Is when one Planet separates from the body or aspect of another, and applies to no other whilst he is in that Sign. *Watery Triplicity,* Are Cancer, Scorpio, and Pisces.

To assist the Student here is added the General Influences of the Planets, according as they are strong or weak in any Nativity.

The Planets when strong in any Nativity are considered as being more fortunate in their influence, but when weak they are said to have an unfortunate influence. Thus when the Planet Saturn is strong and well dignified, he influences men to be grave, steady, and laborious, to be good Students, or those who accumulate wealth by business and industry. But Saturn when ill dignified or weak influences the disposition to be wilful, covetous, and malicious.

Jupiter when strong and well placed incites men to honest principles, to be pious, modest, wise, diligent, and liberal. But Jupiter when weak, renders men prodigal, unfaithful, weak in judgment, and regardless of themselves and their relations. Mars when strong, makes men valiant, generous, but hasty and careless of riches. But when weak, he inclines men to tyrannical actions, to thieving, murder and sedition. The Sun when strong in the Figure of a Nativity, inclines the Native to be magnanimous, valiant, provident and desireous of fame and honor. But when weak he inclines to pride, arrogance and domineering over others, and given to vain boasting. Venus when strong in any Nativity inclines the Native to be of a quiet, even and friendly disposition, loving mirth and cheerfulness, and one that will be prudently amorous. But when Venus is weak and afflicted with cross aspects, the Native will be inclined to riotous, profligate and lewd company, and to be a frequenter of places of ill fame. Mercury when strong inclines the Native to learning, to genius, Arts and Sciences. But when weak Mercury inclines to boasting,

flattery, weakness of intellect and to base and mean practices. The Moon when strong in a Nativity, inclines to ingenuity and politeness, but to be of a wavering disposition, though very peaceable. But when the Moon is weak, or ill dignified, she inclines to idleness, sloth and drunkenness, to waste and extravagance. The aforesaid influence of any Planet will be the more considerable and worthy of remark; if the Planet happen to be the Lord of the Ascendant, or as it is called the Natives Significator, and in order to form your judgment correctly of the Native's disposition etc., you must blend these Rules for the Planets with the Nature and Quality of the Signs in which the Planets are posited as given in the 226th page of this book.

The descriptions of persons in stature and compelexion, is here purposely omited for several reasons.

1st. Because such descriptions are very apt to mislead the the inexperienced Student: as the description of the person can seldom be truly given by the Planet or Significator, being simply in any particular Sign of the Zodiac; but much consideration, judgment and experience is required to weigh correctly how the description ought to be varied by the Significator being in Conjunction or Aspect with other Planets.

2ndly. I have already given upwards of a hundred pages more in this book than was promised in the Prospectus; and if the bulk of this book were to be increased it would be impossible to afford it at the stipulated price, on account of the vast expense incurred in Engraving and Printing so many large Copper Plates as accompany this book.

ON JUDGING OF NATIVITIES.

Previous to giving Judgment on any Nativity, it is necessary to find the amount of the Essential and of the Accidental Fortitudes and Debilities of the Planets, as they are expressed in the foregoing Tables, in page, 285, which may be easily done, by ruling a piece of paper with seven columns, and at the top of the columns write the character for Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Sun, Venus, Mercury, and the Moon, then rule a sufficient number of lines across the paper, and in the column of each Planet write down each Essential and each Accidental Fortitude belonging to it, add them together: proceed in the same way to find each Planet's Essential and Accidental Debilities, subtract the smallest sum from the greater, and the remainder is the total of Fortitudes, or of Debilities, whereby you are to be guided in forming your Judgment on a Nativity.

Lord of the Ascendant, or Lady of the Ascendant: the Planet which is said to rule that Sign of the Zodiac, which is ascending in the east is so called; thus, if Aries or Scorpio ascend, then Mars is Lord of the Ascendant, if Libra or Taurus, then Venus is Lady of the Ascendant, if Gemini or Virgo ascend, then Mercury is Lord of the Ascendant, if Cancer ascend, then the Moon is Lady of the Ascendant, if Leo ascend, the Sun is Lord of the Ascendant, if Sagittary or Pisces, then Jupiter; but when Capricorn or Aquarius ascend, then Saturn is called the Lord of the Ascendant, or the Planet which has the principal signification of the person and disposition of the Native, and is therefore generally distinguished by the name of significator; and what is said about significator in page 238, and 239, etc. of this book, means the Lord of the Ascendant. This must be well understood and attentively considered, otherwise the student will judge of nothing correctly in this science.

It is also necessary to observe, that Lilly and all the ancient Astrologers, were very harsh and positive in their aphorisms. But instead of saying in a positive manner as the ancients did, that such a thing will happen, I would advise the student in giving Judgment, to say, that such events are likely to happen: and consider impartially both the good and the evil indicated by any Nativity, and thus carefully avoid raising unreasonable expectations of prosperity, nor create uneasiness by predicting misfortunes that are never likely to happen. These are the observations and advice of the Author of the Celestial Planispheres, who wishes every student of the Astral Sciences to be guided by just reasoning and probability.

As the Signs which happen to be posited in or upon the cusps of the other Houses of the figure, are called the significators of such Houses, it may therefore be well to make this subject to be easily understood by all who desire to be conversant in this Science, and with this view, the Signs and governing planets are arranged in regular order.

Signs.	♈	♉	♊	♋	♌	♍
Governing Planets.	♂	♀	☿	☽	☉	☿
Signs.	♎	♏	♐	♑	♒	♓
Governing Planets.	♀	♂	♃	♄	♄	♃

Suppose in a certain Nativity that Aries was upon the Ascendant, and Capricorn upon the tenth House or Mid-heaven, in this case Mars is called the Lord of the Ascendant, or significator of the Native; and Capricorn being on the Mid-heaven, Saturn is therefore called the Lord of the 10th House.

The same rule holds good in respect to all the other Houses of the Celestial Figure, and the Signs which may happen to occupy them, with their governing Planets, which are called the Lords or Rulers of such Houses, If two Signs occupy any House, then that House will have two significators, etc.

Observations on Ptolemy's Quadrapartite.

All persons who have attentively studied the Astrological Works of Ptolemy, well know that his aphorisms for judging Nativities, agree most wonderfully with facts and observation. But king Ptolemy being a successor of the Pharaoh's, and the native of a *warm* climate, was like Moses, who had been adopted by Pharaoh's daughter, skilful in all the learning and wisdom of the Egyptians, he thought it no harm when speaking of Nature, to speak of it as it really is, he spoke out plainly, he never thought of throwing a veil over Nature or her works, as we do in this enlightened and modest age,* in this age of purity in which we are really ashamed of the forms that the God of Nature has bestowed upon us; to such an extreme are these matters now carried, that it is next to impossible to write any thing on Natural History, on Medicine, or Astrology, without offending these modern prudes of both sexes. I have therefore taken considerable liberties with the words of Ptolemy, by substituting many words and expressions different to those of Ptolemy, but preserving the same sense as much as it were possible. The reader of this book who may not have seen the Quadrapartite, may refer to Moses's Book of Leviticus: for Moses and Ptolemy both speak of the same things, and their language is just on a parallel in point of *delicacy*. Those modest persons who love Expurgated Editions, will no doubt approve of the liberty I have taken in expunging such expressions of Ptolemy. But those who love to have both the words and sense of an ancient Author, will be angry with me. I do not expect to please every body, I have done what I thought was right in this respect, and with this conviction on my mind, I bid defiance to all snarlers, to all cavilling criticisms.

* This being the age of wonderful discoveries and improvement, both in Sciences and in Morals, a Philosophical Wag has lately asserted that in addition to Missionary and Temperance Societies, a New Society has lately been formed in the British Metropolis, called 'the Modest Society,' which is numerously attended by Old Maids, and by Saints of the opposite sex, who all ashamed of the unseemliness of the Modus Operandi of Nature, have in their collective wisdom and pure modesty, offered a large premium to any person that shall discover a method of perpetuating the human race, by a similar process to that used by gardeners in producing pine apples or asparagus!!

A LIST OF THE MOST APPROVED BOOKS, ON THE CELESTIAL SCIENCES.

1. The Astrologer of the Nineteenth Century, by Raphael, in Octavo, about 1826, 1l 1s.

2. Raphael's Manual of Astrology, in Octava, London, 1828, Price 10s 6d.

These two Works contain a number of Remarkable Nativities; of George IV., of Duke of Wellington, of Lord Byrom, and many other eminent characters of the last and present Age, etc. etc. Their Author Raphael, is a gentleman of great talents and scientific acquirements, and is well known not only in the British Empire, but in the United States of America, and everywhere in Europe, etc., for the wonderful verification of the extraordinary predictions during ten or twelve years past, contained in his elegant Annual the Prophetic Messenger, particularly for the prediction of the death of her late Majesty, Queen Caroline, the Invasion of Turkey by Russia, and lastly in the Prophetic Messenger for 1830, the death of George IV., of the Revolution in France, and the Dethronement of the Bourbons, etc. etc., quite sufficient to confound all sceptics and adversaries of the Predictive Science, except those who are sunk in infidelity or in gross and obstinate ignorance.

3. White's Celestial Intelligencer, London, 1811, Price 10s.

4. Cooper's Edition of Placidus de Titus, in Octavo, London, 1816, 1l 1s.

5. An Edition of Ptolemy's Quadrapartite, in Octavo, 1l 1s.

I have not seen this Edition of Ptolemy, and do not know the date of its publication. Nos. 3, 4, and 5, are published by Davis and Dickson, 17, St Martins Le Grand London.

6. Sibley's Astrology in 2 vols. quarto, 1st Edition in 1785, 2l 12s 6d.

It has been several times reprinted. It is the largest of all Modern Books of Astrology, but not the best: Dr. Sibley

was ignorant of Mathematics, and did not well understand the Works of Placidus on Directional Motion, and in consequence Sibley's book is full of blunders, his calculations were very erroneous, particularly in calculating the Part of Fortune; and he mistook Mundane Oppositions for Mundane Parallels, *et vice versa*. In fact his book is a strange medley containing more than 600 pages of matter out of the 1124 pages, that have not the least connexion with, nor resemblance to Astrology, the only good thing in Sibley's Work is the Introduction, and that in its way is certainly excellent.

7. Wilson's Astrological Dictionary, in octavo, Price 1l 1s.

This is a very useful book.

8. Lilly's Christian Astrology, small 4to, London, 1647, sells at 3l 3s.

9. Partridge's Opus Reformatum; or a Treatise of Astrology, in 2 parts, quarto, London, 1693.

10. Partridge's Defectio Geniturarum; or the Reviving and Proving the True Old Principles of Astrology, in 4 parts. London, 1696.

It may be proper to remark, that No. 8, 9, and 10 of this list, are undoubtedly the very best books of Astrology, that ever were Printed in England: but owing to their extreme scarcity, the Booksellers ask such exorbitant prices for them, as places them beyond the purchase of any except the wealthy Student. From the bulk and quantity of matter contained in these three books, I conclude that each of them is intrinsically worth from a Guinea to 25 Shillings, and as there are no Copper Plates in any of them, there being nothing required but what might be performed by the Letter Press, I believe it would prove a lucrative speculation to any Printer, who would reprint them at the price I have just mentioned, as their well known excellency is so great, that there is not an Astrologer in the United Kingdom but would purchase a copy of each at that price, so that an immense number would be sold, particularly of Partridge's Work which treats in so clear and able a manner on the doctrine of the Hyleg or Apheta, whereby he teaches to calculate and determine with wonderful precision, the principal events and duration of human life.

The following in this List are purely Astronomical.

11. La Lande's Astronomie, in 4 vols. with his Tables, Paris, 1792, Price 6l 16s 6d. 4to, 3rd Edit.

12. Vince's System of Astronomy, 3 vol. 4to, 7l 7s. Cambridge, 1792.

No. 11, and 12, contain the best Astronomical Tables for calculating an Ephemeris of the Planets Motions, and which will find both their Longitude and Latitude equally as they are given in the Nautical Almanack, or in White's Ephemeris.

13. Ewing's Practical Astronomy, with Tables for calculating the places of the Sun, Moon, and Planets, octavo, 10s. Edinburgh, 1799.

This last book is as correct as Nos. 11, and 12, of which it may in some degree be considered an Epitome; the first Epoch of Mean Motions is for 1761, and the last year for 1841, and these for the new style only, whereas to be universally useful the best Modern Astronomical Tables, ought to be applied to Epochas for both the new and the old styles, and extended for some thousands of years, both for years past, and for years to come. A book containing all these requisites might be produced at the price of 18 or 20s. and could not fail of becoming a great favorite with Astronomical Students.

I intend as soon as convenient, to publish a Treatise, shewing the application of the Celestial Planispheres, to various useful Problems in Navigation, etc.

Also, as soon as possible, I shall proceed to complete and publish a new and very easy System of Practical Algebra. This Work is completed to the end of Quadratic Equations, the principal Rules are given under the form of Poetry, that they may be more easily remembered. When completed, this Work will contain all the higher Branches of Algebra, illustrated in the most easy and familiar manner. It would have been published some time since; but has been laid aside, nearly three years, in order to proceed with the completion and publication of the Celestial Planispheres.

New Astronomical and Astrological Ephemeris.

It is respectfully hinted to the Editor of White's Ephemeris, that if he should not think good to be more attentive to the accommodation of the Astrological Purchasers of his

Annual, by inserting the mutual and Lunar Aspects of the Planets, and by giving the Geocentric Longitudes and Latitudes of the Herschel, that a Mathematician, resident in Liverpool, will publish for the Year 1832, and for following years, an Astronomical and Astrological Ephemeris, with all the requisites aforesaid, and which ought in justice to the Scientific Public, to be found in such a Work.

The Purchasers of the Celestial Planispheres may congratulate themselves on being put in possession of so complete a Work at so reasonable a price, which is allowed by some of the Gentlemen Connoisseurs in such matters, who have subscribed for the same, to be worth three times the price it is sold for; and as a proof of their satisfaction, instead of One Guinea the subscription price, * six of them have paid the Author a Guinea and a Half for each copy, in acknowledgement of the industry and talent displayed in the completion and publication of this Work, which contains nearly double the quantity of matter originally proposed; the fourth part of this Work contains more real and useful Astrology that can be found in five hundred pages of Dr. Sibley's large quarto book; and, as they have truly observed, this Work has not its Parallel in any Nation nor language whatever.

The use of these Celestial Planispheres is so easily understood, that the Author's Son, who is not Thirteen Years of Age, can use them with the greatest facility from only one hour's instruction in the same.

Directions concerning the Copper Plates.

All the Plates should be kept as even and as flat as possible, and, as well as any Planispheres which may be constructed by help of them, should be kept in a clear dry place, as free from dust as possible.

Plate No. 3. The Planisphere of the Zodiac, before it can be used must be cut with a pair of good sharp scissors, exactly and carefully, to the extreme outline both on the curved side, and also on the straight edge and ends thereof. In order to preserve the divisions (of which there are nearly two thousand) as clear and as distinct as possible, the Purchaser can varnish it with clear white copal varnish; but before any varnish be laid upon it; it should have the surface covered completely over with clean and clear gum arabic water, spread very lightly by means of a camel's hair tool, or brush which is two or three inches broad, the brush should only be passed once or twice over, for fear of injuring the Print; when thus gummed over it should be laid aside until perfectly dry, and when dry it may be varnished as before men-

* See the last page.

tioned. But this should be done previous to cutting away the superfluous paper.

Plates Nos. 7, and 8. Should be pasted on good solid pasteboard of a moderate strength, this would be best done by a Bookbinder, who could paste them on without creasing them, or without injuring the impression, and would also press them quite smooth and even. When they have been dried for 48 hours, cut out each pattern carefully to the outline, and you will then have thirty two pieces or sixty four patterns of curves, whereby you will be enabled to construct Planispheres for any and for every degree, or intermediate point of Latitude, from the Equator to Sixty Degrees of Latitude, both North and South.

Plate of the Quadrant of Latitude, viz. Plate No. 9, upon the index line with a fine pointed needle prick through each degree, or through each fifth degree, (if very saving of your labor) mark where the point of the needle passed through with a steel drawing pen and ink, and draw an index line on the back of the paper, cut away carefully all the superfluous paper close to the outline, the Quadrant of Latitude will then be ready for the various uses, described in the first part of this Treatise.

Those persons who wish to have the Circle of Twilight upon the Planisphere of London, can mark it thereon immediately by means of the Crepusculine Circle given in Plate No. 7.

Those persons who wish to be very exact in making and using the Planispheres for Nativities, etc. should have the paper upon which the Planisphere is drawn, laid upon a smooth board, and stretched quite smooth and even, and fastened down at each end in the manner of a drawing board. The Author has two boards thus made each ten inches wide, and 32 inches long, with a couple of brass hinges at the back, and two clasps in front, so that they fold up like a book, and serve for two Planispheres at once, which serve also to keep them clean and free from dust.

page.
The time of marriage 215
Testimonies of the number of wives 216
Aphorisms concerning the position of Venus 217
Signs of a good wife 219
Signs of ill fortune by a wife 220
Concord and disagreement 220
Whether a man or his wife shall die first 221
Rules for the marriages of women 222
Of children 224
Of the death of children 225
Nature and quality of the signs and planets 226
General effects of the planets in each of the twelve houses 228
General effects of the planets in each of the twelve signs of the zodiac 233
General effects produced by the position of the lords of the houses. 234
General effects produced by the conjunction of the planets 237
General effects produced by the sextile and trine of the planets .. 241
General effects produced by the quartile and opposition of the planets 247
The signification of directions in Nativities, or the nature of the events likely to be produced thereby 252
The Sun or Moon to the twelve houses 261
Judgments to be inferred from transits 262
Judgments to be inferred from revolutions 264
PTOLEMY'S SYSTEM, ...
Of the space of life 264
Of the prorogatory places 265
Of the part of fortune 266
Governor of the aphetic place 266
The ways of prorogation 267
Of riches 270
Of honor and dignity 271
Of the quality of the profession 272
Of marriage 275
Of children 279
Of travelling 280
Of the quality of death 281
Secondary directions 284
A Table of the essential and accidental fortitudes and debilities of the planets 285
A Table of the essential dignities of the planets, according to the Great Ptolemy 286
Astronomical characters, etc., explained, as used in this work, and engraved on the copper plates 287
Quality of directions as good and bad 287
Aspect 288
Orbs and mean motions of the planets 288
Terms of art 288
To assist the student is added the general influences of the planets, according as they are strong or weak in any Nativity 292
On judging of Nativities 293
Significators or lords of the houses 294
Observations on Ptolemy's quadrapartite 295
A list of the most approved books, on the celestial sciences 296
New astronomical and astrological ephemeris 298
Directions concerning the copper plates 299
Address 304
Acknowledgement 304

ADDRESS.

All Letters to the Author of the Celestial Planispheres (post paid,) and directed to the care of Mr. F. B. Wright, Printer, Castle Street, Liverpool, Lancashire, will meet with immediate attention.

N. B. No Letters received unless *Postage be Paid.*

ACKNOWLEDGMENT.

The Author of the Celestial Planispheres returns his most greatful acknowledgments to Mr. John Watson, to J. H. Esq, Islington, to a Master of Arts, and to three other kind Patrons, that were among the earliest Subscribers, and who, as a testimony which they bear to the merits of this Work, have voluntarily paid the Author a Guinea and a Half each, being the full price of the Book; their Names or Initials will be distinguished by an Asterisk being placed opposite thereunto in the Printed List of Subscribers, which List is intended to be forwarded to them in due time.

Before reading this Work you are requested with your pen to correct the following typographical errors or omissions.

Page 47, line 21, for eleventd, read eleventh; page 59, for 0o 6' of Cancer, read 0o 0' Cancer; page 59, for differenee, read difference; page 61, line 12, read, the Sun's right ascension at birth; page 75, in the direction of the Sun to the body of Venus, the sum 17853, viz. of the logarithms of the second and third terms has been omitted; page 76, for Right Parallel, read Rapt Parallel; page 83, line 7th, for sesquiquadrate, read sesquiquadrates; page 87, line 25, for, the Ascending, read then Ascending; page 91, for Mercury, Leo, 6o 30', read Mercury, Leo, 6o 20'; page 111, for add, read subtract, and for 22h. 28m. read 21h. 16m.; page 140, instead of C. S. in lon. read C. Sin. lon. and instead of S. in lon. read Sin. lon, and for C. S. in lat., read C. Sin. lat.; page 109, example 32nd, read, The distance from the pole of Part of Fortune to the west on the C. P. of Venus; page 169, line 26th, read Table of Houses; page 174, line 3rd, read, be less than; page 204, line 24th, read, and sinister Sextile to Gemini; page 227, in the last aphorism the lines got transposed when in type, and should read thus, Are applying to the conjunction of Part of Fortune: but the retrogradation of Saturn or Mars in angles, is ever attended with difficulties and unhappiness, from which positions I shall always pray the 'Lord deliver us.' Next line to the bottom, read, then level with; page 282, line 30th, read, death by suffocation; page 286, line 2nd, for plants, read planets.

Observe, that etc. is used instead of &c. throughout this book.

F. B. Wright, Printer.